The International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists
IAAP

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

3rd EDITION
2013

International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists
Goetheanum
Medical Section
4143 Dornach
Switzerland

www.iaap.org.uk
email: info@iaap.org.uk

Introductory Note APC 3rd edition 2013

International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists, IAAP

The IAAP is the international umbrella organization of the national associations of Anthroposophic Pharmacists.

Its purpose, objective and tasks are, in detail:

- To represent anthroposophic pharmacists in the anthroposophic-medical movement and in public life on an international level: Anthroposophic pharmacy is understood as an extension of conventional pharmacy.
- To establish standards regarding education, further training and practice in anthroposophic pharmacy (including but not limited to retail pharmacists).
- To promote research in anthroposophic pharmacy.
- To achieve international recognition by specialised publications as well as training material for anthroposophic pharmacists.
- To establish a cooperative network between anthroposophic pharmacists to exchange information and best practice throughout the world.
- To initiate / coordinate international activities.

It is in respect of this last aim that the Board is pleased to publish the 3rd edition 2013 of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex (APC).

Several definitions have been harmonised with the definitions in the Swiss and German Law, as well as in the monograph on anthroposophic preparations "Anthroposophische Zubereitungen" in the Swiss Pharmacopoeia.

Several manufacturing procedures have been worded more precisely and new manufacturing methods have been included. Where appropriate, the European Pharmacopoeia has been referred to. Also the lists of starting materials used have been updated to include new substances, nomenclature, references to official pharmacopoeias as well as a literature reference which demonstrates that the substance is generally known in anthroposophic pharmacy / medicine.

The most relevant change however is the inclusion of five monographs:

- Cydonia oblonga, fruit
- Cydonia oblonga, fruit, heat treated aqueous tincture 1:2.1
- Cydonia oblonga, fruit, glycerol extract with heat treatment 1:2.1
- Cydonia oblonga, fruit, mother tincture obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold: Cydonia oblonga e fructibus ferm 33b
- Levico Water

The APC is reviewed and updated by an anthroposophic pharmaceutical committee responsible to the IAAP board.

The changes in summary:

NEW TEXTS

Manufacturing methods
3.3.1, 3.3.2, 3.9.3, 3.12.2
5.2.2, 5.2.3
7.2, 7.5
8.2 with 8.2.1 and 8.2.2

Monographs
Cydonia oblonga, fruit
Cydonia oblonga, fruit, heat treated aqueous tincture 1:2.1
Cydonia oblonga, fruit, glycerol extract with heat treatment 1:2.1
Cydonia oblonga, fruit, mother tincture obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold: Cydonia oblonga e fructibus ferm 33b
Levico Water

REVISED TEXTS

General chapters
All texts
Manufacturing methods
All methods
Changed numbers: 7.2 into 7.4
Appendices
All appendices

DELETED TEXTS

Manufacturing methods
3.9.2

Members of the APC committee

Gabriele Jones, pharmacist, Germany

Herwig Judex, chemist, Germany

Judith Klahre Parker, pharmacist, United Kingdom, Chairperson of the British Association, BAAP, (British Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists)

Andrea Kühn, pharmacist, Germany

Jakob Maier, pharmacist, Switzerland, Board Member of VAEPS and Member of the Committee on Complementary Medicinal Products of the Swiss Pharmacopoeia

Mónica Mennet-von Eiff, pharmacist, Switzerland, President of the Swiss association VAEPS, Board Member of the IAAP; Member of the Working Group HOM on Homoeopathic Raw Materials and Stocks of the European Pharmacopoeia

Christiaan Mol, pharmacist, Germany, Chairman of the APC committee, Board Member of the IAAP; Member of the Committee on Manufacturing Methods of the German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia

Peter Pedersen, pharmacist, Denmark; Member of the Committee on Manufacturing Methods of the German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia

Nelly Segur, pharmacist, France

Marion Zeeck, pharmacist, Germany

The APC is recognised by the following national anthroposophic pharmaceutical associations:

the ***French*** Association ***AFERPA*** (Association Française d'étude et de recherche sur la pharmacie anthroposophique – French Association for Studies and Research on Anthroposophic Pharmacy);
the ***British*** Association, ***BAAP*** (British Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists) and its Associate, ***New Zealand***;
the ***Belgian/Dutch*** Association ***BNVAA*** (Belgisch – Nederlandse Vereniging van Antroposofisch georiënteerde Apothekers – Belgian Dutch Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists);
the ***Brazilian*** Association ***Farmantropo*** (Associação Brasileira de Farmácia Antroposófica – Brazilian Anthroposophic Pharmacy Association);
the ***German*** Association ***GAPiD*** (Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Apotheker in Deutschland – Society of Anthroposophic Pharmacists in Germany);
the ***Austrian*** Association ***ÖGAPh*** (Österreichische Gesellschaft anthroposophischer Pharmazeuten – Austrian Society of Anthroposophic Pharmacists);
the ***Italian*** Association ***SOFAI*** (Società di farmacisti antroposofi in Italia – Society of Anthroposophic Pharmacists in Italy);
the ***Swiss*** association ***VAEPS*** (Verband für Anthroposophisch Erweiterte Pharmazie in der Schweiz – Association for Anthroposophically Extended Pharmacy in Switzerland).

Dr. Manfred Kohlhase, President IAAP, 30.06.2013
For full details of the IAAP Guidelines, see website www.iaap.org.uk

Endorsement *Universität Witten/Herdecke*

As a professor for Anthroposophic Medicine I warmly welcome the third edition of the Anthroposphic Pharmaceutical Codex. Anthroposophic Medicine is an integrative system of medicine involving conventional medicine and a set of differentiated therapeutic tools. A very important tool is its array of medicinal products. Anthroposophic Medicine claims a substance related effect as well as a dynamic or process related effect for its medicines, both of which are meant to activate self healing processes. The task of the APC is to develop appropriate quality principles as well as quality standards in line with the characteristics and requirements of anthroposophic medicines. Substance related standards are well documented as well as manufacturing methods, which relate to the process characteristics of anthroposophic medicinal products.

Prof. Peter Heusser

universität Witten/Herdecke

Endorsement *IVAA*

The International Federation of Anthroposophic Medical Associations (IVAA) is the international umbrella organisation representing 31 anthroposophic medical associations worldwide in political and legal matters. As well as services provided to member organisations, the IVAA provides similar assistance to doctors in more than 30 additional countries throughout the world.

The IVAA´s mission includes political efforts to ensure legal and regulatory safeguards for the availability of Anthroposophic Medicinal Products (AMPs) in any country in the world where doctors practise the anthroposophic medical approach.

The Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex (APC) is an indispensable document for defining the anthroposophic medical system, and provides detailed insight into the different types of medicinal products used in Anthroposophic Medicine, including source materials, pharmaceutical processes and standards.

The APC makes it possible to relate knowledge of substances and pharmaceutical processes to insight into human health and illness. From a pharmaceutical point of view it offers a full description of Anthroposophic Medicine as a complex medical system founded on the interrelationship between these processes and insights.

On behalf of the IVAA I wish to acknowledge and endorse this achievement by the community of anthroposophic pharmacists affiliated within the IAAP. Successful compilation of the codex now gives Anthroposophic Pharmacy a firm position within general medical culture.

Peter Zimmermann MD, PhD
President IVAA

IVAA Internationale Vereinigung Anthroposophischer Ärztegesellschaften
International Federation of Anthroposophic Medical Associations
Fédération Internationale des Associations Médicales Anthroposophiques

IVAA International Federation of Anthroposophic Medical Associations
Rue du Trône 194
B-1050 Bruxelles
Phone: +32 2 644 00 20
email: contact@ivaa.info

Endorsement *Escamp*

With pleasure I have taken notice of the recently finalised new version of the APC. The development of the APC is very important for ESCAMP. The aim of ESCAMP is to develop the scientific basis for a permanent regulatory framework for Anthroposophic Medicinal Products (AMPs) in Europe. The ESCAMP strategy includes a description of Anthroposophic Medicine as a whole system and an evaluation of single AMP's and AMP groups (see ***www.escamp.org***). For this work the APC provides essential pharmaceutical source material, including definitions of AMPs as well as descriptions of their starting materials, manufacturing processes and dosage forms.
On behalf of ESCAMP I herewith endorse the relevant steps that have been undertaken to revise and expand the APC, in particular the inclusion of specific substance monographs with relevant quality standards.

Dr. Harald Johan Hamre
Freiburg im Breisgau

ESCAMP
European Scientific Cooperative on Anthroposophic Medicinal Products

Harald Johan Hamre
Scientific Director and President of the European Scientific Cooperative of Anthroposophic Medicinal Products (ESCAMP)

Endorsement *ECHAMP*

Dear Sir or Madam,

The Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex, APC is now available in its revised 3rd edition. ECHAMP is the international industrial association that has given itself a number of tasks with regard to the further development of anthroposophic and homoeopathic medicinal products. Article 2 of the Articles of Association quotes as follows:

"Active promotion of the harmonisation, legalisation, research and the respective integration of homeopathic and anthroposophic medicinal products into official *pharmacopoeias*, primarily in the European Union, with the purpose of further enabling effective access by representatives of the professional groups and the general public to these medicinal products." (Italics by the author)

The APC is an important document from this perspective, since it provides the pool of pharmaceutical information in pharmacopoiea language which makes such an objective possible for the stakeholders active in the area.

We wish to express our congratulations to the International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists, IAAP, for this new step. As an association also representing the anthroposophic medicinal product industries, we fully endorse the APC and wish that it will provide guidance in any concerned regulation process.

Nand de Herdt,
President of ECHAMP

ECHAMP

European Coalition on Homeopathic and Anthroposophic Medicinal Products E.E.I.G.
Rue Gray 100, 1040 Brussels ,Belgium, Tel: +32-2-649.94.40, Fax: +32-2-649.41.77
office@echamp.eu , www.echamp.eu , VAT BE 0467 826 644 RPR Brussels

Endorsement *Hogeschool Leiden*

The International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists, IAAP, is publishing the 3rd edition of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex, APC. For me as an academic in the field of Anthroposophic Medicine it is of paramount importance to rely on the efforts of the joint disciplines making Anthroposophic Medicine a constantly developing reality, in this case the precious work of my colleague pharmacists. With enthusiasm therefore I have taken notice of the further developments, in particular of the inclusion of monographs of starting materials and preparations. The APC gives the framework of what belongs to the pharmaceutical identity of Anthroposophic Medicine. With this edition this identity is further validated and applied to single important preparations. With anthroposophic preparations derived from the quince, Cydonia oblongata, now monographed in the APC I have had the pleasure to carry out clinical research[1]. I wish the IAAP further successful steps in further developing the APC.

Erik Baars
Hogeschool Leiden
Lectoraat Antroposofische Gezondheitszorg

[1] Erik W. Baars, Miek Jong, Andreas F. M. Nierop, Inge Boers, and Huub F. J. Savelkoul, "Citrus/Cydonia Compositum Subcutaneous Injections versus Nasal Spray for Seasonal Allergic Rhinitis: A Randomized Controlled Trial on Efficacy and Safety," ISRN Allergy, vol. 2011, Article ID 836051, 11 pages, 2011. doi:10.5402/2011/836051

Endorsement *Eberhard Karls University, Tübingen*

The quality of medicinal products is - besides their safety and efficacy - definitely an important aspect of public health. Usually the required quality is defined by the relevant pharmacopeias and the proper drug quality is guaranteed by respective analytical procedures. However, the quality of an anthroposophic medicinal product represents usually much more than the sum of its analytical characteristics. Its unique quality is strictly related to the entire process chain involved, including the source material, pharmaceutical processes and standards.
In this context, I am very pleased to hold in my hand the 3rd Edition of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex. It looks and defines quality in its entirety and represents thus a huge step forward for anthroposophic medicinal products in the direction of an up to date quality understanding. The APC successfully helps to close the gap which exists between those medicinal products described in official pharmacopeias, e.g. the European Pharmacopeia and the German Homeopathic Pharmacopeia, and the traditional anthroposophic codices. It was a real challenge to develop the quality related tools in line with the special needs of anthroposophic medicinal products.

Congratulations to the IAAP for showing the courage to venture to do this and congratulations for having done it so successfully.

Prof. Rolf Daniels
Chair of Pharmaceutical Technology, Pharmaceutical Institute
Eberhard Karls University, Tübingen

EBERHARD KARLS
UNIVERSITÄT
TÜBINGEN

Endorsement *Faculty of Pharmacy, Philipps-Universität Marburg*

Anthroposophic medicinal products do have a long tradition in Germany and its neighbouring countries. The pharmaceutical profile of these products is comparable to that of homoeopathic medicinal products and their quality is usually defined by the quality of the starting materials as well as the manufacturing processes, as required by regulation. Consequently, the quality and testing procedures of raw materials and stocks - like for example mother tinctures - used for the production of anthroposophic medicinal products should be defined by monographs in the relating pharmacopeias (e.g., German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia and also more and more the European Pharmacopoeia).

Therefore, I am very pleased that the 3rd Edition of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex now includes four monographs on starting materials and the relating preparations. This represents a huge step towards a state of the art quality understanding of anthroposophic medicinal products. The APC successfully helps to close the gap, which exists between those medicinal products and starting materials described in official pharmacopeias as mentioned above, and those which have not been covered by any official monograph so far. It is a real challenge to develop the quality related tools in line with the special needs of anthroposophic medicinal products.

Congratulations to the IAAP for effectively closing this quality gap for anthroposophic starting materials.

Prof. Michael Keusgen
Dean of the Faculty of Pharmacy,
Philipps-Universität Marburg, Germany

Philipps Universität Marburg

Foreword

Pharmacy extended by the principles of anthroposophy began to be developed at the beginning of the 20th century by Rudolf Steiner (founder of anthroposophy, 1861 – 1925) and Oskar Schmiedel (Austrian chemist, 1887 – 1959), in collaboration with a number of physicians. Their aim was to reinterpret and complement the results of pharmaceutical and medical research with insights gained from anthroposophic research of the human being and nature.
The basis of the anthroposophic approach to pharmacy is the "holistic" knowledge of mankind and nature, which recognizes the notion that human beings and the kingdoms of nature are related through a common evolution[1].
This perception leads to a comprehensive view of substances in their relationship to health, illness and to a specific approach to pharmacy.

Therefore anthroposophic pharmacy uses substances from the mineral, plant and animal kingdoms[2,3].

Anthroposophic medicinal products have been on the market world-wide and prescribed by qualified medical practitioners since 1921.

The range of anthroposophic medicinal products is partially determined by the physical characteristics of substances, whereby allopathic, phytotherapeutic and homoeopathic criteria are taken into consideration. Most particularly, anthroposophic medicinal products are characterised by their manufacturing processes involving specific anthroposophic and typical homoeopathic pharmaceutical procedures. The range of anthroposophic medicinal products includes potentised medicinal products, manufactured by using the methods of the official homoeopathic pharmacopoeias, as well as concentrated mineral, herbal or animal substances or preparations and compounded medicinal products. Considering this diversity, anthroposophic medicinal products, cannot be defined under a single substance classification.

[1] Jos Verhulst: „Der Erstgeborene" (The first-born), publisher Verlag Freies Geistesleben, Stuttgart, D 2001.
[2] Rudolf Steiner/Ita Wegman: „Grundlegendes für eine Erweiterung der Heilkunst nach geisteswissenschaftlichen Erkenntnissen." GA 27, publisher Rudolf Steiner Verlag, Dornach, CH, 1992. In English: „Extending Practical Medicine – Fundamental Principles based on the Science of the Spirit". Rudolf Steiner Press , London, GB, 1996
[3] Rudolf Steiner: „Geisteswissenschaft und Medizin", 20 Vorträge für Ärzte (1920), Rudolf Steiner Verlag, Dornach, CH 1985. In English: „Introducing Anthroposophical Medicine" (previously published as: Spiritual Science and Medicine). Twenty lectures to doctors. Dornach 21 March – 9 April 1920, GA 312. Anthroposophic Press, Hudson, NY, USA, 1999.

The *Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex APC* gives an overview of substances and methods used in the manufacture of anthroposophic medicinal products as well as of the related quality parameters.

Legal Situation
Today the European Union Directive 2001/83/EEC and amendments contain the main legislation concerning medicinal products. The legal status of anthroposophic medicinal products in the EU is closely related to that of homoeopathic medicinal products (see below).

Preamble of Directive 2001/83/EEC n° (22) refers to anthroposophic medicinal products as follows:
"Anthroposophic medicinal products, which are described in an official pharmacopoeia and prepared by a homoeopathic method are to be considered, as regards to registration and marketing authorization, as homeopathic medicinal products."

From a regulatory point of view anthroposophic medicinal products can be devided into two categories:
- anthroposophic medicinal products manufactured according to a homoeopathic manufacturing method within the meaning of Directive 2001/83/EEC, article 1, 5.:
  "Any medicinal product prepared from substances called homoeopathic stocks in accordance with a homoeopathic manufacturing procedure described by the European Pharmacopoeia or, in absence thereof, by the pharmacopoeias currently used officially in the Member States. (...)"
- anthroposophic medicinal products other than those manufactured by a homoeopathic manufacturing method.

These are equally important and have never been included in any pharmacopoeia.

The definitions of anthroposophic medicinal products given in the Swiss and German Drug Laws take both categories into account (translations by APC Committee):

Switzerland: Regulation of Swissmedic concerning the simplified Authorisation of Complementary and Herbal Medicinal Products (Verordnung des Schweizerischen Heilmittelinstituts über die vereinfachte Zulassung von Komplementär- und Phytoarzneimitteln)
Art. 4, 2 f: Anthroposophic medicinal product:
Medicinal product, whose active substances are manufactured by a homoeopathic manufacturing procedure, or according to an anthroposophic manufacturing procedure described in the German Homoeopathic

Pharmacopoeia or in the British Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia or according to a special anthroposophic manufacturing procedure and that is formulated and developed according to the anthroposophic knowledge of man, animal, substance and nature and is meant to be used according to these principles.

Germany: Medicinal Products Act (Gesetz über den Verkehr mit Arzneimitteln)
Art. 4, (33) An anthroposophic medicinal product is a medicinal product that has been developed according to the anthroposophic knowledge of man and nature and that is manufactured according to a homoeopathic manufacturing procedure described in the European Pharmacopoeia or in absence thereof in a pharmacopoeia officially used in the Member States or according to a special anthroposophic manufacturing procedure and that is meant to be used according to the anthroposophic principles concerning man and nature.

In many EU countries, and also world-wide, medicinal products used for the anthroposophic therapeutics are thus partially integrated in legislation.

In Brazil as well as in Australia the APC has been officially recognised as quality standard and reference for anthroposophic medicinal products (RESOLUÇÃO RDC No – 26, DE 30 DE MARÇO DE 2007; amendments to the Australian Therapeutic Goods Act, 2009).

In summary anthroposophic medicinal products as a whole are step by step gaining legal recognition in the EU as well as world-wide, and among other things this requires comprehensive publication of their pharmaceutical quality.

The publication of the *Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex* is to provide transparency of anthroposophic pharmaceutical quality for pharmacists and bodies requiring an appreciation of anthroposophic medicinal products and pharmacy. Furthermore it provides a basis for the maintenance of existing and development of new anthroposophic medicinal products.

The relationship of the APC to the European Pharmacopoeia, to other existing official Pharmacopoeias and non official pharmacopoeias

The APC is published by the IAAP, an independent association of professional pharmacists, within the context of official existing pharmacopoeias. It is the intention of the APC to refer where possible to existing pharmacopoeias. In fact anthroposophic medicinal products are often manufactured and controlled according to existing specifications and standards.
A part of the reference pharmacopoeias for the APC are published by official Authorities, in particular
The European Pharmacopoeia
The French Pharmacopoeia
The German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia (which is a part of the German Pharmacopoeia);
The Swiss Pharmacopoiea has implemented two texts concerning anthroposophic pharmacy in the last four years:

- in 2009 (Suppl. 10.1) with the general Ph.Helv.-monograph *"Praeparationes anthroposophicae (Anthroposophic Preparations)"* (Ph.Helv. CH 306); it was the first time that anthroposophic preparations appeared as a monograph in an official pharmacopeia. This monograph includes the paragraphs definitions, starting materials, methods of preparation and dosage forms, by analogy with the Ph.Eur.-monograph Homoeopathic preparations Ph.Eur. 1038.
- in September 2013 (Suppl. 11.1) the new Ph.Helv.-chapter *"17.7 Manufacturing methods for anthroposophic preparations"* came into force. This chapter gives an overview on the general manufacturing processes and describes in more detail some manufacturing methods which are more frequently used in anthroposophic pharmacy and had not been described in an official pharmacopoeia before.

The APC served as important basis to establish both of these Ph.Helv.-texts. Therefore it can be concluded, that the continuing work of the APC supports the establishment of the pharmaceutical quality standards and the regulation of anthroposophic medicinal products in Switzerland.

Further official pharmacopoeias of reference:
The Austrian Pharmacopoeia
The British Pharmacopoeia

In particular the *European Pharmacopoeia* today represents and for the future will represent a reference of paramount importance for the APC.

Therefore in part IV of the APC containing the lists of the various substances used in anthroposophic pharmacy reference is made where possible to the European Pharmacopoeia and other official pharmacopoeias.

Particularly important Ph.Eur. monographs are:
Herbal drugs for homoeopathic preparations (2045)
Homoeopathic preparations (1038)
Methods of preparation of homoeopathic stocks and potentisation (2371)
Minimising the risk of transmitting animal spongiform encephalopathy agents via human and veterinary medicinal products (50208)

Mother tinctures for homoeopathic preparations (2029)
Tinctures (chapter in 0765 Extracts)
Viral safety (50107)
Other pharmacopoeias referred to in the APC are not officially recognised. Nevertheless they provide reliable standards accepted e.g. by regulatory authorities, in particular the British Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia.

The IAAP understands its task to sustain anthroposophic pharmaceutical activities at any level (e.g. manufacturing, quality control, regulatory affairs), **worldwide**, that is, beyond the countries of the European Pharmacopoeia Convention. Therefore during the evolution of the APC other official pharmacopoeias (or reliable private pharmacopoeias) will possibly be referred to, e.g. the Brazilian Pharmacopoeia.

Table of Content

Structure of the Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex, APC

Part I "Definitions" provides definitions and describes quality aspects as well as parameters related to anthroposophic medicinal products. The different stages incurred in the obtaining of a medicinal product, from the starting material to the dosage form, are described in this part.

Part IIa "General Monographs of specific production methods (Pharmaceutical processes)" contains general monographs concerning the types of preparations/ active substances that are prepared by specified procedures. Beneath the relevant general monograph(s), different specific production methods by which a particular type of a starting material can be prepared are either quoted from other pharmacopoeias or an APC production method is set out.

In this way, the relationship between the APC and other pharmacopoeias, as well as the option to define substances through their production methods are outlined.

Schematically the following order is applied:

General monographs

Definition, Identification, Tests, Assay, Storage, Recommended Designation

Specific production methods related to the particular general monograph

Ph.Eur. Methods	*HAB Methods*	*Ph.fr. Methods*	*B.Hom.P. Methods 1, 2, 3, 4, 5a, 5b, 6, 8a, 12*	*APC Methods*

Part IIb "Monographs of starting materials and preparations" sets standards for specific starting materials and preparations. In their last section the monographs of the starting materials list
a) Some existing anthroposophic preparations that utilise the starting material and/ or
b) Manufacturing methods, described in the Ph.Eur., the HAB or the APC commonly used for the processing of the particular starting material. That list is not meant to be exhaustive.

Part III, information about dosage forms in anthroposophic pharmacy as well as production methods of specific dosage forms for anthroposophic medicinal products.

Part IV "Appendices"

In **appendix I** starting materials for the preparation of anthroposophic medicinal products are listed (not excipients and vehicles). The appendices are numbered according to the related chapter in part I: 2.1., 2.2., 2.3., 2.4., 2.5., 2.6.

In **appendix II** a link to the HPUS is given:
- Correlation table: Ph.Eur./HAB manufacturing methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy and corresponding manufacturing in the HPUS.

List of Abbreviations and Symbols

*	see p. 67
1 CH	Symbol for the first centesimal potency, see also C1 and 1C
1 DH	Symbol for the first decimal potency, see also D1 and 1X
1C	Symbol for the first centesimal potency, see also 1 CH and C1
1X	Symbol for the first decimal potency, see also 1 DH and D1
ABMA-Vademecum	Gardin NE, Schleier R: Medicamentos Antroposóficos: Vademecum. Associação Brasileira de Medicina Antroposófica. São Paolo: Editor João de Barro; 2009
aph	ad preparationes homoeopathicae
APC	Anthroposophic Pharmaceutical Codex
B.Hom.P.	British Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia
B.P.	British Pharmacopoeia
Br1	Numbering of the production methods of the B.Hom.P.
C1	Symbol for the first centesimal potency, see also 1 CH and 1C
CVD	Chemical Vapour Decomposition
D1	Symbol for the first decimal potency, see also 1 DH and 1X
DAB	Deutsches Arzneibuch (German Pharmacopoeia)
DAC	Deutscher Arzneimittel-Codex (German Codex of Medicinal Products)
EU	European Union
fhp	for homoeopathic preparations
GHP	German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia. Unauthorized translation of the HAB. In case of differences between the GHP and the HAB the latter is decisive
Gl	Symbol for mother tinctures prepared by HAB method 41 using glycerol
H 2.2.6	Analytical method specified in the HAB
HAB	Deutsches Homöopathisches Arzneibuch (German Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia)
HPUS	The Homœopathic Pharmacopœia of the United States
IAAP	International Association of Anthroposophic Pharmacists
IVAA statement 2013	see p. 69
KC Monograph	Monograph of the “Kommission C” (Commission of the German Ministry of Health for the anthroposophic therapeutic system and substances), published in the official Gazette of the German government (in German: “Bundesanzeiger”)
Liste HAS	Liste der Homöopathischen und Anthroposophischen Stoffe (Anhang 4 zurVerordnung des Schweizerischen Heilmittelinstituts über die vereinfachte Zulassung von Komplementär- und Phytoarzneimitteln (List of Homoeopathic and Anthroposophic Subtances (Appendix 4 in the Regulation of the Swissmedic concerning the simplified Authorisation of Complementary and Herbal Medicinal Products in Switzerland))
LM	Symbol for potencies prepared according to Ph.Eur. (2371) 5.2 draft
MT	Mother tincture
Ph.Eur.	European Pharmacopoeia
Ph.Eur. (2371)	Ph.Eur. Monograph 2371 “Methods of preparation of homoeopathic stocks and potentisation”
Ph.fr.	Pharmacopée Française (french Pharmacopoeia), including monographies de souches pour préparations homéopathiques (monographs of the stocks for homoeopathic preparations)
Ph.Helv.	Pharmacopoea Helvetica (Swiss Pharmacopoeia)
Q	Symbol for potencies diluted by the ratio 1: 50 000
Rh	Symbol for mother tinctures prepared by HAB methods 21 and 22 (rhythmic procedure)

Glossary

In this glossary only those terms are referred to, that need extra clarification prior to the definitions given in part I.

Composition	Definition given in the monograph "Anthroposophische Zubereitungen", (Anthroposophic preparations), Swiss Pharmacopoeia, Supplement 10.2, (translation by Swissmedic): "Compositions are active substances which are obtained, when two or more starting materials or preparations, with or without excipients, are processed together in a pharmaceutical process of anthroposophic pharmacy (e.g. Ferrum-Quarz)."
Excipient	Excipients are auxiliary substances, which may be used for the production of pharmaceutical dosage forms. Excipients may be used in the production of mixtures.
Pharmaceutical process	General term for substance transformations at different stages to obtain starting materials for medicinal products or a medicinal product.
Preparation/active substance	A class of processed starting material specified in the monographs of part II.
Production method	A general manufacturing procedure specified in a pharmacopoeia (see e.g. HAB).
Raw material	Substance which has not undergone any pharmaceutical process and meets a general quality characterisation, e.g. an optical identification.
Starting material	A substance or a composition that meets a specification and can be used as active substance or can be further processed.
Vehicle	Vehicles are auxiliary substances which may be used to produce an active substance. Vehicles may be used in the production of mixtures.

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART I

Definitions

Table of Content

Part I

1. Anthroposophic medicinal product

DEFINITION

An anthroposophic medicinal product is conceived, developed and produced in accordance with the anthroposophic knowledge of man, nature, substance and pharmaceutical processing[1]. The application within anthroposophic medicine results from that knowledge[2].

According to anthroposophic principles, active substances may be starting materials which are used as such or starting materials which have been transformed into active substances by a process of anthroposophic pharmacy, including compositions.

An anthroposophic medicinal product can contain one or more active substances (see also part I, chapter 4).

An anthroposophic medicinal product can fundamentally be employed in every dosage form, including external (topical), internal and parenteral dosage forms (see also part III).

PRODUCTION

The active substances or dosage forms of anthroposophic medicinal products are produced:

- in accordance with classical homoeopathic or anthroposophic-homoeopathic manufacturing methods as described in the Ph.Eur., HAB, Ph.fr., and B.Hom.P. (Methods 1, 2, 3, 4, 5a, 5b, 6, 8a, 12)
- in accordance with anthroposophic pharmaceutical codex production methods, i.e. "APC Methods"

and/or

- in accordance with anthroposophic manufacturing methods described in the individual monograph.

An anthroposophic medicinal product complies with the relevant specifications/ monographs set out in parts I and II.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

Concerning the *designation* of anthroposophic medicinal products a reference to the APC is recommended.

2. Starting materials, general information

Starting materials for the production of anthroposophic medicinal products are:

2.1. Minerals, rocks, including natural waters

2.2. Starting materials of botanical origin
Dried or fresh plants or parts of plants, including algae, fungi and lichens;
Plant secretions, juices, extracts, oleoresins, essential oils or distillation products.

2.3. Starting materials of zoological origin
Whole animals, organs, parts of organs dried or fresh;
Animal secretions, extracts, blood products, calcareous products.

2.4. Starting materials that can be described chemically

2.5. Starting materials that have undergone special treatment

2.6. Compositions (for further information see "Glossary")

Starting materials for the production of anthroposophic medicinal products comply with any relevant monograph in the European Pharmacopoeia or in the absence thereof, with the relevant monographs in national pharmacopoeias used in the Member States, or in absence thereof with the individual monograph.

Starting materials can be active substances themselves or can be processed into preparations (see also Part I, chapter 4).

[1] See IAAP brochure: "Basic Information on the Working Principles of Anthroposophic Pharmacy", 2005, http://www.iaap.org.uk/downloads/principles.pdf

[2] For clarification it has to be mentioned here, that anthroposophic medicine from the beginning includes "Over the Counter" products (OTC). A part of its medicinal products had been conceived right from the start for broad use for typical health disorders; see Chapter XX, "Typical Remedies", in Rudolf Steiner/Ita Wegman: "Grundlegendes für eine Erweiterung der Heilkunst nach geisteswissenschaftlichen Erkenntnissen." GA 27, publisher Rudolf Steiner Verlag, Dornach, CH, 1992.
In English: "Extending Practical Medicine – Fundamental Principles based on the Science of the Spirit". Rudolf Steiner Press , London, GB, 1996

2.1. Minerals, rocks, including natural waters
Minerals are solid, crystalline components of natural origin belonging to the earth's crust and other celestial bodies. A mineral has a defined crystal system and crystal class. Minerals are chemically and physically homogeneous to a significant extent. In reality, however, there are always deviations from the theoretical mineral formula. Many minerals may show differences in their colours. Form and habitus may be significantly different within the same type.

Rocks are composed of one or more minerals having a geological definition and distribution in their natural deposit with a certain statistical homogeneity.

Pieces that will be used for production should be big enough to allow mineralogical identification. If a powdered mineral is used, adequate documentation should ensure the quality and natural origin. In fact pieces used for production must be free from visible foreign matter. They have not undergone any unwanted mechanical or chemical treatment: in particular any chemical reaction, colouring, varnishing, heating and artificial radiation must be excluded. The amount of foreign matter accepted after chemical analysis is specified in the respective monograph.

Natural waters can come from a natural source (e.g. Levico), from the sea (e.g. aqua maris) or from mineral cavities (e.g. agate water).

List of minerals, rocks, including natural waters: see part IV, appendix 2.1.

2.2. Starting materials of botanical origin
Starting materials of botanical origin are:
- Dried or fresh plants or parts of plants, including algae, fungi and lichens;
- Plant secretions, juices, extracts, oleoresins, essential oils or distillation products.

Fresh plants should be used shortly after harvest. If this is not possible, the quality is guaranteed by appropriate measures, e.g. freezing.

If material from cultivated plants is used preference should be given to materials from plants cultivated by biodynamic cultivation ("Demeter" certified) or by other certified organic cultivation methods in accordance to the relevant European regulations ruling organic agricultural products (see also Council Directive (EEC) n° 2092/91).
If wild plants are harvested protection of species according to relevant regulations is granted and special care is taken of the eco-system concerned.

Plants or parts of plants are, as far as possible, free from impurities such as soil, dust, dirt and other contaminants such as fungal, insect and other animal contaminations. They are not decayed.

Harvested plants or the mother tinctures made thereof are analysed for content of heavy metals and pesticides. The range and frequency of this testing can occur according to a monitoring plan based on risk assessment.

Unless otherwise stated, the collecting or harvesting times are generally:

Whole plants with underground parts and plants without underground parts	at flowering time
Leaves and shoots	when fully developed
Flowers	shortly after opening
Bark	throughout the year
Underground parts of annual plants	at seed ripening time
Underground parts of biennial and perennial plants	in spring
Fruits and seeds	at the time of ripening
Fungi	when the fruiting bodies are fully developed

Starting materials of botanical origin see part IV, appendix 2.2.

2.3. Starting materials of zoological origin
Starting materials of zoological origin are:
- Whole animals, organs, parts of organs dried or fresh;
- Animal secretions, extracts, blood products, calcareous products.

Lower animals as well as warm-blooded animals are used.

Animal husbandry and keeping must be adequate for the animal species (see also Council Directive (EEC) n° 2092/91). In particular in the case of warm-blooded

species animals from well-monitored "Demeter" or biodynamic herds are preferentially used.

The starting materials of zoological origin must meet the requirements of the European and/ or relevant national pharmacopoeias regarding the preparation of medicinal products from materials of animal origin and with EU directives and/or national guidelines of the appropriate regulatory authorities.
In particular the Ph.Eur. monographs on TSE safety (Ph.Eur. 50208), and viral safety (Ph.Eur. 50107) apply.

Animals must be healthy and in good hygienic condition. The intervals given in legislation after the administration of drugs to animals must be observed before the animals are used.

Health requirements, animal keeping, protection of species and processing of animals must comply with the relevant guidelines of responsible national authorities and those of the European Union, where applicable.

List of starting materials of zoological origin see part IV, appendix 2.3.

2.4. Starting materials that can be described chemically
Starting materials that can be described chemically are inorganic and organic substances.
Organic substances are generally of natural origin, e.g. purified fractions.

Preference should be given to clearly traceable substances, that comply with the quality standards in 2.1, 2.2, 2.3.

List of starting materials that can be described chemically see part IV, appendix 2.4.

2.5. Starting materials that have undergone special treatment
Starting materials that have undergone a special treatment are: e.g. plants, parts of plants cultivated by special treatment (see part IIa, chapter 1.1. Vegetabilisation methods of substances used for mother tinctures).

List of starting materials that have undergone special treatment see part IV appendix 2.5.

2.6. Compositions
Different starting materials described in 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4, 2.5 undergo one or more pharmaceutical processes that will lead to a substance that cannot be described as an addition of its ingredients. The rationale for the synthesis is an anthroposophic formula, in accordance with the anthroposophic understanding of man and nature[1].

List of compositions see part IV, appendix 2.6.

3. Vehicles and excipients

Vehicles are auxiliary substances, which may be used for the production of active substances (e.g. ethanol to obtain an extract or lactose monohydrate to obtain a potentised preparation). Vehicles are also used in the production of mixtures (see part IIa, chapter 9).

Excipients are auxiliary substances, which may be used for the production of the pharmaceutical dosage forms (e.g. NaCl to obtain an isotonic solution for parenteral preparations). Excipients are also used in the production of mixtures (see part IIa, chapter 9).

Vehicles and excipients used in the manufacture of anthroposophic medicinal products comply with the relevant requirements of the European Pharmacopoeia or of the national pharmacopoeias used in the EU Member States.

4. Active substances

4.1. Starting materials
Active substances can be starting materials themselves or preparations.
Starting material used directly as active substances may be the final dosage form, e.g. a herbal tea.

4.2. Preparations
Preparations are obtained from one or more starting materials.

Preparations comply with the specifications described in part II or in the individual monograph.

Preparations can be the final dosage form or can be processed further, e.g. to obtain mixtures.

[1] As an example see: "Biodoron/Kephalodoron" , in Persephone N° 12, M. Kohlhase editor; publisher Verlag am Goetheanum, Dornach, CH, 1998.

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART IIa

General monographs of preparations and specific production methods (Pharmaceutical processes)

Table of Content Part IIa

Introduction: Brief description of the main pharmaceutical processes applied in anthroposophic pharmacy

Several pharmaceutical processes are described in existing homoeopathic pharmacopoeias as "production methods". These homoeopathic pharmacopoeial production methods can be seen as examples of the general anthroposophic pharmaceutical principle described in the general APC monographs of part IIa.

In anthroposophic pharmacy the treatment of the raw or starting materials can already be part of the pharmaceutical processing, e.g. a plant can be cultivated under treatment with a metal or mineral preparation.

Metals can either be used as a concentrated starting material or undergo a pharmaceutical process depending on the rationale of the anthroposophic therapeutics.

Preparations can be differentiated according to the thermal condition or treatment in the pharmaceutical process. Hereby follows a scheme concerning the related pharmaceutical processes applied to plant material and the main sphere of action.

Preparations may be the final dosage form, be incorporated into the final dosage form or be processed further, e.g. by potentisation.

Treatments in liquid phase

Pharmaceutical process	Heat/cold degree	Starting material	Main sphere of therapeutic action [1, 2]
Cold maceration	2 – 8 °C	fresh or dried plants, all parts	System of nerves and senses throughout the whole organism
Maceration	15 – 25 °C	fresh plants, all parts	system of nerves and senses throughout the whole organism
Rhythmic processing	4/37 °C	fresh plants, all parts	rhythmic system
Digestion	37 °C	fresh plants, leaves, flowers	rhythmic system, circulation
Infusion	60 – 90 °C	dried leaves, flowers	metabolic system, any type of gland
Decoction	ca 100 °C	dried roots, barks, seeds	metabolic system, digestive tract (stomach, intestine)
Distillation	steam, ca 100 °C	fresh or dried plants, all parts	metabolic system, digestion

Treatments in dry phase

Pharmaceutical process	Heat degree	Starting material	Main sphere of therapeutic action [1, 2]
Toasting	170 – 250 °C	dried plants, all parts, dried zoological starting material	metabolic system, digestion (liver)
Carbonisation	above 200 °C	dried plants, all parts, zoological starting material	metabolic system, kidney organisation
Ash process	above 500 °C	dried plants, all parts, zoological starting material	region of the lungs (respiration)

A crucially important pharmaceutical process is potentisation:

- Potentised preparations are gradually diluted substances, whereby at each diluting step a rhythmic succussion (liquid potencies) or trituration (solid potencies) has been carried out.
- During this process the surface of the vehicle and the substance to be potentised are expanded and the mixing is thorough. The potentising time differs for solid and liquid potentised preparations. Astronomical aspects may be considered (e.g. solar or lunar eclipse). Anthroposophic pharmacy mainly uses decimal attenuations. For co-potentised preparations the ratio between active substances to vehicle may vary, differing from 1:10 for homoeopathic co-potentising methods (see also Part IIa, 8 "Potentised Preparations").

[1]General scheme for the correlation between spheres of therapeutic action/ degree of potentisation:

Mother tincture – D10	Metabolic system
D11-D20	Rhythmic system
>D20	System of nerves and senses

See also:
International Federation of Anthroposophic Medical Associations, "The System of Anthroposophic Medicine", pp. 26-28 at ***http://www.ivaa.info/userfiles/file/SystemAnthroposMedicine2011_Interaktiv.pdf***

[2] See IAAP brochure: "Basic Information on the Working Principles of Anthroposophic Pharmacy", 2005, http://www.iaap.org.uk/downloads/principles.pdf

Correlation table of general methods for the manufacturing of anthroposophic medicinal products – related specific production methods

General method of the APC	Related specific production method				
	Ph.Eur. (2371)	**HAB**	**Ph.Helv.**	**B.Hom.P.**	**APC**
1. Special treatment of raw materials					
1.1. Vegetabilisation methods of substances used for mother tinctures			17.7.1.1, 17.7.1.2	Br1	1.1.1, 1.1.2
2. Metal preparations					
2.1. Metal mirrors			17.7.2.1 – 4		2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.1.3, 2.1.4
3. Tinctures and viscous extracts					
3.1. Cold treated mother tinctures and liquid preparations thereof		38	17.7.6		
3.2. Tinctures made by maceration with water or ethanol/water	1.1.1 – 1.1.11	12b, c, m, n, o, p, q; 49	17.7.7.1		3.2.1, 3.2.2
3.3. Glycerol macerates	2.1.1 – 2.1.3 2.2.1 – 2.2.4				3.3.1, 3.3.2
3.4. Liquid preparations made by maceration with oil					3.4.1
3.5. Tinctures made by percolation	1.1.8 – 1.1.9		17.7.7.2		3.5.1
3.6. Buffered aqueous mother tinctures under exclusion of oxidative influence		32			
3.7. Fermented tinctures		53	17.7.7.3		3.7.1
3.8. Tinctures made by digestion (Digestio)		18, 24b	17.7.8.1		3.8.1
3.9. Tinctures made by infusion (Infusum)		20, 24a;	17.7.8.3		3.9.1, 3.9.2, 3.9.3
3.10. Tinctures made by decoction (Decoction)		12k, l, 19, 23	17.7.8.4		3.10.1
3.11. Oil extracts with heat treatment		12d – g, 57			
3.12. Preparations made by distillation		52	17.7.8.5		3.12.1, 3.12.2

General method of the APC	Related specific production method				
	Ph.Eur. (2371)	**HAB**	**Ph.Helv.**	**B.Hom.P.**	**APC**
3.13. Tinctures obtained with rhythmic application of heat and cold		21 – 22, 33 – 37, 51	17.7.9		3.13.1, 3.13.2.
4. Solid starting materials obtained by heat					
4.1. Toasted preparations (Tosta)			17.7.4.1		
4.2. Carbons (Carbo)			17.7.4.2	Br4	
4.3. Ashes (Cinis)			17.7.4.3	Br3	
5. Solid preparations from plants (drying onto a vehicle)					
5.1. Solid preparations from fresh plants			17.7.5.1		5.1.1
5.2. Solid preparations from liquids, plant juices or aqueous extracts			17.7.5.2		5.2.1, 5.2.2, 5.2.3
6. Liquid dilutions	3.1.1 – 3.1.3				
7. Compositions			17.7.3		7.2.1 – 7.2.4
8. Potentised preparations Potentising specifications in:	 1 – 5	12j, 17 11, 15, 18, 19, 20 – 24, 32 – 38, 39a, 39b, 45, 51, 53		Br5 – 6	8.1.1, 8.1.2, 8.2.1, 8.2.2 Other APC Methods 8.3
9. Mixtures		12, 16			

Note: anthroposophic medicinal products may also be manufactured in accordance with individual specifications or monographs, see also Part I, chapter 1.

1. SPECIAL TREATMENTS OF RAW MATERIALS

In anthroposophic pharmacy treatment of the raw materials can be part of the pharmaceutically relevant processing, e.g. a plant can be cultivated under treatment with a preparation of a mineral, normally containing a specific metal.

1.1. Vegetabilisation methods ("vegetabilised metals")

DEFINITION

Vegetabilisation of substances can be considered as a particular kind of potentising process of metals or minerals taking place through nature. The potentising process is carried out with plants and normally goes through three life cycles. The life cycle means one vegetation period (growing season) for annual, and two growing seasons for biennial plants. The substance and appropriate plant are chosen in accordance with the rationale of anthroposophic understanding of man and nature.

PREPARATION OF MINERAL SUBSTANCES

See APC Method 1.1.1 and 1.1.2.

CULTIVATION

The cultivation of vegetabilised metals is a three years process (for biennial plants 6 years), meaning three generations of plants are grown until the final plant can be further processed, for example to a mother tincture. This process is basically the same for each specific metal (mineral)-plant combination.
Important for the cultivation process is, that each plant grows in the cultivation substrate and field soil specifically prepared for each vegetation period.
The following is a cultivation description for each of the three growing seasons or life cycles.
Exemptions have to be prescribed in individual monographs (e.g. Bryophyllum, Equisetum arvense and Thuja occidentalis).

1st life cycle:
The seeds are sown in soil, which has been treated with a diluted preparation of the concerned inorganic substance (approximately 50 – 200 g/m²). Alternatively, jars with cultivation substrate, mixed with 5 – 20 g diluted preparation/L can be used. In this case, the young growing plants are transferred to soil, which has been treated as mentioned above.
When the plants reach their full development, i.e. in the flowering stage, compost is made from these plants. For preparing that compost, the upper aerial parts of the specific plant are used as prescribed in the individual monograph; the flowers or/and the leaves with petioles, possibly with stalks, but no woody parts are included. The plant material is mixed together with neutral plant-compost which activates the first composting processes. This metal plant-compost mixture is stored in terracotta pots which are buried almost completely in the soil in the same field used in that growing season. The composting process is continued during the whole winter until the next spring.
In spring the compost is completed and ready to be used to treat the plants of the next growing season, the second life cycle.

2nd life cycle:
Seeds of the same species are sown in cultivation substrate or soil, which was treated with the compost, made from the plant of the 1st growing season. These plants (of the second life cycle) are also grown to their specific plant development stage (i.e. flowering). Compost is made from these plants, which is prepared in a way similar to the compost of the plants of the first life cycle. This compost is stored in terracotta pots, buried in the soil, in the field of the plants of the second life cycle.

3rd life cycle:
Seeds of the same species are sown in cultivation substrate or soil which was treated with compost made from the plants of the second vegetation period. The plants of the third growing season (third vegetation period) are cultivated to their specified harvest stage.

FURTHER PROCESSING

The harvested plants are processed into a mother tincture according to a manufacturing method of the Ph.Eur., HAB or the APC or are otherwise processed.

IDENTIFICATION, TESTS, ASSAY

According to the relevant tincture monograph (See Part IIa, chapters in section 3) or dried herbal drug.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the fertilised plant,
- the substance used,
- the designation "cultum", "culta",
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Examples: Tabacum Cupro cultum APC, Equisetum arvense Silicea cultum APC

Specific pharmacopoeia/APC production methods to produce vegetabilised substances
APC Method 1.1.1 Vegetabilisation of substances of metallic origin ("vegetabilised metals")

For the vegetabilisation of substances of metallic origin plants are treated with a diluted substance, prepared from either a naturally occurring metal or a metal containing mineral (ore).

PREPARATION OF METALLIC SUBSTANCE

The raw material for the manufacturing of the mineral substance is a naturally occurring metal or a metal containing mineral (ore). This is treated during several steps with mineral acids and other substances, containing the chemical elements C, H, N, O and S, to a complex composition containing the metal in a form whose chemical structure is not clearly defined. It is triturated with lactose monohydrate, the result being the metal substance D1: the content of the metal is 8 – 12 %. The metal substance D1 is diluted with a neutral material, e.g. cellulose or sucrose, to form the diluted metal substance that is ready for use. The calculated metal content of this diluted metal substance differs, according to the toxicity and natural abundance of the metal in the soil:

Au, Ag, Pb, Sn, Hg:	max. 100 ppm
Fe, Cu:	max. 1000 ppm

APC Method 1.1.2 Vegetabilisation of silicates

For the vegetabilisation of silicates plants are treated with appropriate mineral containing silica.

PREPARATION OF MINERAL SUBSTANCE

The raw material for the manufacturing of the mineral substance is a pulverised mineral silicate. This is treated during several steps with mineral acids and other substances, containing the chemical elements C, H, N, O and S, to a complex composition containing silicium in a form whose chemical structure is not clearly defined. It is triturated with lactose monohydrate; the result is the silica, particularly quartz substance D1: the content of silicium is 8 – 12 %, calculated as silicium dioxide . The silica, particularly quartz substance D1 is diluted with a neutral material, e.g. cellulose or sucrose, to form the diluted silica, particularly quartz substance that is ready for use. The calculated content is max. 1 % silicium dioxide.

2. METAL PREPARATIONS

Metals can either be used as a concentrated starting material or undergo a pharmaceutical process depending on the rationale of the anthroposophic therapeutics.

2.1. Metal mirrors

DEFINITION

By producing metal mirrors the metal is transformed through different states of aggregation.The metals or metal salts can be brought through a liquid state (melted or as solution), gas state or plasmatic state to be subsequently (obtained again) condensed in solid state as the pure metal.
Metal mirrors are deposits of metals in reduced state onto a surface by a specific method of production.

Metal mirrors, produced according to APC methods 2.1.1, 2.1.2 and 2.1.3 can be removed from the surface and may be potentised according to Ph.Eur. method 4.1.1 and 4.1.2 and HAB method 48.

TESTS

The following analytical tests are always carried out for the metal which is used as starting material to produce the mirror. The metal mirror itself is only tested when it is produced by the method of reduction of metal salts (2.1.3), the method of chemical vapour decomposition (2.1.2) or the method of sputtering (2.1.4). The metal mirror produced by the method of distillation (2.1.1) is tested after further processing as the first or second produced dilution.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one suitable identification test is carried out.

TESTS

see the individual monograph.

ASSAY

Content according to the individual monograph.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the metal used,
- the designation ”metallicum praeparatum” or in the case of metal mirror foil the name of the metal followed of the word “foil”,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,

Examples: Argentum metallicum praeparatum APC
Cuprum mirror foil APC.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to prepare metal mirrors

APC Method 2.1.1 Metal mirrors obtained by distillation

Metal mirrors prepared by distillation are obtained from the pure metal.
The pure metal is heated in appropriate equipment under vacuum until it evaporates. The temperature and

the vacuum are to be chosen in such a way, that the metal is distilled. The metal vapour condenses onto the surface of the cooler parts of the distillation equipment, producing a metal mirror. The metal mirror is removed after cooling from the surface.
The exact conditions of the distillation are described in the individual monograph.

APC Method 2.1.2. Metal mirrors obtained by Chemical Vapour Decomposition, CVD
Metal mirrors prepared by chemical vapour decomposition are obtained from a volatile metal compound.
A volatile metal compound is distilled under vacuum in appropriate equipment. The temperature and the vacuum are to be chosen in such a way, that the metal compound is distilled. The vapour is further heated until decomposition of the metal compound. As a result, the pure metal condenses onto the surface of the distillation equipment, producing a metal mirror. After cooling the metal mirror is removed from the surface.

APC Method 2.1.3. Metal mirrors obtained by reduction
Metal mirrors prepared by reduction are obtained from an appropriate metal salt.
To a solution of a metal salt an appropriate reducing agent and reagents are added. The pure metal precipitates onto the surface of the reaction vessel producing the metal mirror. The metal mirror is removed from the surface, filtered from the solution, washed with purified water and ethanol (the concentration of ethanol depending of the nature of the used reagents), until foreign matters are no longer detectable in the rinsing water and then dried.

APC Method 2.1.4. Metal mirror foil
Metal mirror foils are prepared by a process which transforms the processed metal into a plasma aggregation and finally condenses as an approximate 55 – 65 nm thick metal mirror on to the substrate.
To produce a metal mirror foil a process known as sputtering is used. In this vapour phase technique there is no melting of the metal. The sputtering process is most commonly used for thin-film deposition of many different metals. High energy ions impacting on the target can liberate sputtered atoms of the metal as well as positive ions and electrons.
A metal target is put under the effect of a magnetrom. A magnetrom is comprised of a cathode (electron source) an anode (electron collector) and a combined electric and magnetic field. Vacuum conditions ($0.5 – 5 \times 10^{-3}$ mbar) are generated and an inert gas (e.g. Argon Ph.Eur.) is used as medium. The process begins as a result of a collision and momentum transfer from an incoming particle which impacts the inert gas molecules. Ions of the inert gas impact then the surface of the metal and the result is an ejection of metal atoms from the surface. The electric field leads to an ionisation of the metal which goes into a plasma aggregation state (at 30 – 45 °C) and condensates as a metal mirror on the substrate, in this case a plastic foil (e.g. PET).
After this process the metal mirror foil is stitched to a special cotton tissue directly over the metal mirror.
The metal mirror foils must not be further processed.

TESTS
Thickness of the mirror.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
the reference pharmacopoeia/codex,
for external use only.

3. TINCTURES, MOTHER TINCTURES, GLYCEROL MACERATES AND VISCOUS EXTRACTS

Tinctures, mother tinctures, glycerol macerates and viscous extracts are obtained from starting materials from botanical or zoological origin by pharmaceutical processes under cold condition (2 – 8 °C), at ambient temperature (15 – 25 °C), with heat treatment at different temperatures, by rhythmic application of heat and cold, by fermentation as well as by destillation. If applicable, vehicles e.g. water, ethanol, water/ethanol mixtures, glycerol, oils may be used. They may be processed further.

3.1. Cold treated mother tinctures and liquid preparations thereof

DEFINITION
Cold treated mother tinctures are prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried herbal drugs. The maceration is carried out at a temperature of 2 – 8 °C using purified water, water for injections or isotonic solution.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the matter to be extracted.
The prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph is added to the starting material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container, where applicable protected from light, for an appropriate time (at least 7 days). Shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol and 2-propanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce mother tinctures obtained under cold conditions (2 – 8 °C)
HAB Method 38

3.2. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by macerations with water or ethanol/water

DEFINITION

Tinctures and mother tinctures made by maceration with water or ethanol/water are liquids and are obtained from fresh (frozen) or dried matter of botanical or zoological origin. The maceration is carried out at a temperature not above 25 °C by using ethanol of a suitable concentration or purified water.

PRODUCTION

If necessary, comminute the matter to be extracted; animals are processed immediately after killing. The prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph is added to the starting material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container at the required temperature, where applicable protected from light for an appropriate time. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary. Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another macerate of the herbal or animal starting material used. If prescribed in the individual monograph, the tincture can be adjusted to the specified content by concentration, carried out generally under vacuum.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Ethanol content *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.10)*. Where applicable, the ethanol content complies with that prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol and 2-propanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the herbal or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures and mother tinctures made by macerations with water or ethanol/water

Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods
1.1.1 – 11

HAB Methods
1 – 4
12b, c, m, n, o
49

APC Method 3.2.1 (related to Ph.Eur. (2371) Method 1.1.8)
Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.2.1 are prepared using the maceration methods given in the Ph.Eur. monograph "Extracts" (0765). Use 1 part of dried plant or parts of plants to 20 parts of ethanol in suitable concentration (see HAB H 5.3), unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph.
If adjustment to a given concentration is necessary, calculate the amount of ethanol required to obtain the concentration specified or used for production from the equation given in Ph.Eur. (2371) Method 1.1.1. Mix the calculated amount of ethanol with the filtrate. Allow to stand for not less than 5 days at a temperature not exceeding 20 °C, then filter if necessary.

POTENTISATION
The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
2 parts of the mother tincture and
8 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

The 3rd decimal dilution (D3) is made from
1 part of 2nd decimal dilution and
9 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

Unless a different ethanol concentration is specified, use ethanol 30 per cent *(m/m)* for D4 and then 15 per cent *(m/m)* for subsequent dilutions from D5 onwards and proceed accordingly.

APC Method 3.2.2 (related to HAB Method 12a)
Preparations according to APC Method 3.2.2 are tinctures for external use. They are prepared as follows:
Use 1 part of dried plant or parts of plants to 10 parts of ethanol in suitable concentration (see HAB H 5.3), unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph. Glycerol may be added up to 10 per cent.

3.3. Glycerol macerates

DEFINITION
Glycerol macerates comply with the definition in Ph.Eur. monograph 1038. They are prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried matter of botanical or zoological origin. The maceration is carried out at the required temperature (not above 25 °C) using glycerol of a suitable concentration or a glycerol solution containing sodium chloride.

PRODUCTION
Lower animals are killed immediately before processing; the parts of warm-blooded animals are processed immediately after being killed. Killing is carried out with respect for the animal suffering.
Comminute the matter to be extracted. Add the prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph to the raw material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container at a temperature not above 25 °C, protected from light for an appropriate time. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another macerate of the starting material of botanical or animal origin used.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic or electrophoretic (animal matter) identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Conductivity *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.38).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph. Alternatively, the refractive index can be used.
Refractive index (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.6*). Where applicable (preparations according to APC Methods 3.3.1 and 3.3.2), the refractive index of the preparation is measured in appropriate equipment, this measure indicates the water content in the glycerol[1], and this value is called η_m indicating the refractive index of the macerate. This measure is used to calculate the proportion of glycerol of the macerate. This calculation is made based on the following equation:

$$\%\ Glycerol\ {}^{m}\!/_{m} = \frac{\eta_m - 1.3195}{0.0016} \qquad \text{(eq.1)}^{1}$$

Electrophoresis *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.31).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the characteristics prescribed in the individual monograph.
Microbiological examination *(Ph.Eur. 2.6.12, 2.6.13).* Where applicable, the macerate complies with the limits prescribed.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

[1] Miner, Carl S.& Dalton, N.N: (ed.). *Glycerol*, American Chemical Society, Monograph Series, n^0 117. Reinhold Publishing Corp., New York 1953.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the dried herbal drug or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug or animal matter used,
- the glycerol content of the solvent used for the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to macerate,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce glycerol macerates
Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods
2.1.1 – 2.1.3 (HAB Methods 42)
2.2.1 – 2.2.4 (HAB Methods 41)

APC Method 3.3.1
Glycerol macerates according to APC Method 3.3.1 are prepared from 3 parts of fresh (frozen) matter of botanical or zoological origin and 7 parts of glycerol by maceration.
The prescribed quantity of glycerol is added to the starting material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container for an appropriate time according to the individual monograph. If necessary, shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
The content of glycerol is determined using measurement of refractive index and should be 70–85 % *(m/m)* of the total mass, calculated based on the equation above (refractive index). Adjustment of the final content of glycerol to 85 % is carried out using measurement of refractive index, and adding glycerol.
Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary by adding another macerate of the herbal or animal starting material used.

APC Method 3.3.2
Glycerol macerates according to APC Method 3.3.2 are prepared from 1 part of dried plants or parts of plants, 2 parts of purified water and 7 parts of glycerol by maceration.
The prescribed quantity of purified water is added to the starting material. Allow standing in a closed container for 6 hours. After that, the prescribed quantity of glycerol is added to the mixture. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container for an appropriate time according to the individual monograph. If necessary, shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
The content of glycerol is determined using measurement of refractive index and should be 75–85 % *(m/m)* of the total mass, calculated based on the equation above (refractive index). Adjustment of the final content of glycerol to 85 % is carried out using measurement of refractive index, and adding glycerol.
Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary by adding another macerate of the herbal or animal starting material used.

3.4. Liquid preparations made by maceration with oil

DEFINITION
Liquid preparations prepared by maceration with oil are prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried matter of botanical or zoological origin. The maceration is carried out at the required temperature (not above 25° C) mostly by using arachis oil or olive oil.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the matter to be extracted. When animal matter is used, lower animals are killed immediately before processing, the parts of warm-blooded animals being processed immediately after killing. Killing is carried out with respect for the animal suffering, e.g. according to HAB H 5.2.4.The prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph is added to the starting material. Mix thoroughly and allow to stand in a closed container at the required temperature, protected from light for an appropriate time. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another macerate of the herbal or animal starting material used.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Refractive index *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.6)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Peroxide value *(Ph.Eur. 2.5.5)*. Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the dried herbal drug or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug or animal matter used,
- where applicable, the solvent used for the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce liquid preparations made by maceration with oil

APC Method 3.4.1
Preparations made according to APC Method 3.4.1 are oil extracts for external use prepared from 1 part of lower animals and 10 parts of arachis oil, refined (Ph.Eur.) as follows:

After having killed the animals with CO_2, the animals are minced and mixed thoroughly with 10 parts of arachis oil, refined (Ph.Eur.). Protect the mixture from light. The extraction time should not exceed 8 hours. Then filter.

3.5. Mother tinctures made by percolation

DEFINITION
Mother tinctures made by percolation are prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried herbal drugs.
The percolation is carried out at room temperature using ethanol of suitable concentration or purified water.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the herbal drug to be extracted to pieces of suitable size. Mix thoroughly with a potion of the prescribed extraction solvent and allow to stand for an appropriate time. Transfer to a percolator and allow the percolate to flow slowly making sure that the matter to be extracted is always covered with the remaining extraction solvent. The residue may be pressed out and the expressed liquid combined with the percolate.

Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out, if necessary, either by adding the extraction solvent of suitable concentration or by adding another percolate of the herbal drug used for the preparation.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol and 2-propanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11).* Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the dried herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce mother tinctures made by percolation

Ph.Eur. (2371), Methods 1.1.8, 1.1.9

HAB Methods 4

APC Method 3.5.1 (related to Ph.Eur. (2371) Method 1.1.8)

Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.5.1 are prepared using the percolation methods given in the Ph.Eur. monograph "Extracts" (0765). Use 1 part of dried plant or parts of plants to 20 parts of ethanol in suitable concentration (see HAB H 5.3), unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph.
If adjustment to a given concentration is necessary, calculate the amount of ethanol required to obtain the concentration specified or used for production from

the equation given in Ph.Eur. (2371) Method 1.1.1. Mix the calculated amount of ethanol with the filtrate. Allow to stand for not less than 5 days at a temperature not exceeding 20 °C, then filter if necessary.

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
2 parts of the mother tincture and
8 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

The 3rd decimal dilution (D3) is made from
1 part of 2nd decimal dilution and
9 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

Unless a different ethanol concentration is specified, use ethanol 43 per cent *(m/m)* for subsequent dilutions from D4 onwards and proceed accordingly.

3.6. Buffered aqueous mother tinctures manufactured under exclusion of oxidative influence

DEFINITION

Buffered aqueous mother tinctures manufactured under exclusion of oxidative influence are produced by exhaustive extraction of fresh (frozen) plants or parts of plants under the exclusion of atmospheric oxygen with a buffer.

If the fresh plant material is not processed immediately, it must be stored in liquid nitrogen. The loss on drying *(H 2.8.1)* must be determined before it is placed in liquid nitrogen.
From 1 part of the plant material an amount of mother tincture, prescribed in the individual monograph, is produced according to HAB Method 32. This amount is determined in a validation and depends on the loss on drying of the harvested plant material.The mother tincture corresponds to the 2nd decimal dilution (mother tincture = D2).
At first add a defined amount of ascorbate phosphate buffer solution to the plant material and then finely reduce this mixture to a slurry. Under further size reduction, add a quantity of ascorbate phosphate buffer solution, sufficient for achieving the required amount of extract. Express, filter and adjust to the required volume with ascorbate phosphate buffer solution.

According to the individual monograph the production of the mother tincture may require the addition of a second extract from material of the same plant species harvested at a different season. In this case mix the extracts in an appropriate apparatus to a composition (see Chapter 7) and then dilute in a defined proportion with ascorbate phosphate buffer solution. This composition is the mother tincture (=D2).

Potentisation is generally carried out according to HAB Method 32.

Buffered aqueous mother tinctures and their liquid dilutions are exclusively intended for parenteral dosage forms. Before they are processed to finished products, the mother tincture (D2) and the liquid dilution D3 must be stored for between 6 weeks and 1 year. Any eventual sediment must be excluded from the further processing.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

Loss on drying *(H 2.8.1)*. Loss on drying of the residue after filtration.
Sterility *(Ph.Eur. 2.6.1)*. If buffered aqueous mother tinctures and their liquid dilutions are stored before further processing, they must comply with the test.
Proportion of original extracts: Where applicable, the proportion of both extracts in the composition is determined e.g. by HPLC or by other suitable methods.
Methanol and 2-propanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed, airtight container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the herbal drug used,
- the amount of herbal drug used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce buffered aqueous mother tinctures manufactured under exclusion of oxidative influence

HAB Method 32

3.7. Fermented mother tinctures

DEFINITION

Fermented mother tinctures are aqueous preparations

from fresh (frozen) or dried herbal drugs prepared by fermentation at room temperature.

PRODUCTION

If necessary, comminute the herbal drug. Add purified water according to the individual monograph and mix thoroughly. If stated in the individual monograph, add the prescribed fermenting agent. Allow to stand at room temperature for the time prescribed in the individual monograph protected from air, from light and, if necessary, from oxidation. Hereafter express and filter, if necessary.

Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out with purified water or by adding purified water to the residue and expressing again.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol and 2-propanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the dried herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce fermented mother tinctures

HAB Method 53
APC Methods 7.2.1, 7.2.3, 7.2.4

APC Method 3.7.1 (see also Compositions 7.2.1)
Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.7.1 are prepared from fresh plants or parts of plants following the procedure given below.
Finely comminute the plants or parts of plants and mix 1 part of the plant mass with 1 part of purified water. Leave to ferment at 20 to 24°C with the exclusion of air, ending the fermentation when the pH of the fermentation liquid has fallen to between 4 and 5. Then express and weigh the expressed liquid. The weight of the expressed liquid is equal to 2 parts and is mixed with 1 part of a mixture of 0.95 parts of ethanol 94 per cent (*m/m*) and 0.05 parts of purified water. This tincture can together with another tincture of the same plant undergo a special pharmaceutical process leading to a composition according to method 7.2.1.

This procedure is followed for plants harvested in the summer and for plants of the same species, harvested in the winter. The mother tincture is produced by composing equal parts of the two tinctures.

POTENTISATION

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
3 parts of the mother tincture and
7 parts of ethanol 30 per cent (*m/m*).

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
1 part of the 1st decimal dilution and
9 parts of ethanol 15 per cent (*m/m*).

Subsequent dilutions are produced as stated for D2.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

Preparations according to APC Method 3.7.1 carry the designation „ferm APC 3.7.1".

3.8. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by digestion (Digestio)

DEFINITION

Tinctures and mother tinctures made by digestion are liquids prepared from fresh (frozen) or dried plants or parts of plants with an additional heat treatment usually at 37 °C. The digestion is carried out using ethanol of a suitable concentration or purified water.

PRODUCTION

If necessary, comminute the plant or parts of plants to be extracted. The quantity of extraction liquid is

added according to the individual monograph. Mix thoroughly and warm to 35 – 39°C. Then keep at 35 – 39°C in a covered container. Allow to stand at this temperature for the time prescribed in the individual monograph, stirring occasionally. After cooling, allow to stand at room temperature in a well-closed container, protected from light for the time described in the individual monograph. Add ethanol of appropriate concentration if prescribed. If necessary shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.
Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out by diluting, either with the same liquid used for the digestion or with another digestion of the same raw material.
If prescribed in the individual monograph, the tincture can be adjusted to the specified content by concentration, carried out carefully and generally under vacuum.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. Where applicable the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol and 2-propanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the dried herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the designation "Digestio" or "ethanol. Digestio" if ethanol is used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures and mother tinctures made by digestion

HAB Methods 18
HAB Method 24b

APC Method 3.8.1
Tinctures according to APC Method 3.8.1 are prepared from fresh plants with purified water as follows: Comminute the plants or parts of plants unless otherwise prescribed in the monograph. The amount of plants or parts of plants and purified water are defined by the monograph. Introduce the amount of purified water into a round-bottomed flask, place in a water bath and heat up to 48 – 52 °C. Add the plants or parts of plants whereby the flask should be a half to three quarters full, mix thoroughly. Close the flask hermetically. Keep the mixture at 48 – 52 °C for 6 hours. Allow to cool to 35 – 39 °C in the course of 20 – 24 hours and maintain this temperature for 64 – 72 hours with occasional stirring. Allow to cool. If prescribed in the individual monograph add the amount of ethanol 94 per cent *(m/m)* prescribed then express and filter.
Tinctures according to APC Method 3.8.1 which are prepared with purified water only, are generally processed immediately to solid preparations (see method 5.2 "Solid preparations from liquids, plant juices or aqueous extracts").

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Preparations made according to APC Method 3.8.1 carry the designation "Digestio APC 3.8.1". The same applies to preparations made from them. Preparations made according to APC Method 3.8.1 with addition of ethanol carry the designation "ethanol. stab. digestio APC 3.8.1".

3.9. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by infusion (Infusum)

DEFINITION
Tinctures and mother tinctures made by infusion are prepared from adequately prepared dried plant material by adding boiling purified water. If ethanol (of the prescribed concentration) is used, the quantities of ethanol and purified water are added separately.

PRODUCTION
If necessary, comminute the plant material. Boiling

purified water is used for extraction. If ethanol of suitable concentration is used, the quantity of ethanol is either used prior to extraction for moistening the dried plant material for the time prescribed or added to the mixture after cooling. Allow to stand in a well-closed container for the time prescribed. If only purified water is used as solvent, it is also used for moistening and to make up the final mass if prescribed. Express and filter, if necessary. If only purified water is used as solvent the preparation is processed further immediately.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol and 2-propanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official Pharmacopoeia , or another limit is justified and authorised.
Sterility *(Ph.Eur. 2.6.1)*. Applicable only if the infusion is a stored aqueous preparation.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light, if the tincture contains ethanol.
If aqueous tinctures made by infusion are stored they must meet the requirements of sterility *(*Ph.Eur. 2.6.1*)*.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the designation “Infusum” or “ethanol. Infusum”, if ethanol is used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures and mother tinctures made by infusion

HAB Method 20
HAB Method 24a

APC Method 3.9.1 (related to HAB Method 20)
Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.9.1 are prepared from dried plants or parts of plants, using 1 part of the plant material and 10 parts of ethanol of the concentration, prescribed in the individual monograph as follows:
Add the amounts of ethanol and purified water required to obtain the prescribed ethanol concentration separately.
Unless a degree of comminution is specified in the monograph, comminute the herbal drug appropriately, add the total amount of boiling purified water, cover and allow to stand until room temperature is reached, for not more than 12 h. Compensate any water loss by evaporation and add the required amount of ethanol. Allow to stand in a well-closed container for 24 – 36 h, stirring occasionally. Express and filter.

POTENTISATION

The mother tincture corresponds to the 1st decimal dilution (Ø = D1).
The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
9 parts of ethanol of the same concentration as calculated for the mother tincture.

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced accordingly; in this process the ethanol concentration is reduced with each step in the succession – 43 – 30 – 15 per cent *(m/m)* until the 15 per cent level is reached.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

Preparations made according to APC Method 3.9.1 carry the designation “ethanol. stab. infusum”. The same applies to preparations made from them.

APC Method 3.9.2 (related to HAB Method 20)
deleted

APC Method 3.9.3
Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.9.3 are prepared from fresh or dried plants or parts of plants, using 1 part of the plant material and 10 parts of water *(m/m)* or according to the individual monograph. Comminute the starting material and add the total amount of boiling purified water, cover and allow to stand until room temperature is reached, for not more than 12 h. Compensate any water loss. Allow to stand in a well-closed container for 24 – 36 h, stirring occasionally. Express and filter.

POTENTISATION

The mother tincture corresponds to the 1st decimal dilution (Ø= D1).
The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
9 parts of glycerol 85 % *(m/m)*.

Subsequent dilutions are produced as stated for D2.

3.10. Tinctures and mother tinctures made by decoction (Decoction)

DEFINITION

Tinctures and mother tinctures made by decoction are prepared from fresh or dried plants or parts of plants that have been allowed to boil with ethanol of a suitable concentration or purified water or extracted with glycerol 85 % at 100°C.

PRODUCTION

If necessary, comminute the plants or parts of plants, add the prescribed quantity of extraction solvent according to the individual monograph and mix thoroughly. Heat the mixture to boiling (in the case of glycerol 85 % to 100°C), if necessary under reflux, maintaining at boiling temperature (in the case of glycerol 85 % at 100°C) for the time prescribed, usually 30 min. After cooling allow to stand in a well-closed container protected from light at room temperature for the time described in the individual monograph. If necessary, shake or stir occasionally. Express and filter, if necessary.

Adjustment of the content of constituents may be carried out by diluting, either with the same liquid used for the decoction or with another decoction of the same raw material.
If prescribed in the individual monograph, the tincture can be adjusted to the specified content by concentration, carried out carefully and generally under vacuum.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol and 2-propanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the herbal substance used,
- where applicable, the fresh or dried herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the ethanol content in the preparation,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the designation “Decoctum” or “ethanol. Decoctum”, if ethanol is used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce tinctures and mother tinctures made by decoction

HAB Methods 12k, 12l, 12q
HAB Methods 19
HAB Methods 23

APC Method 3.10.1 (related to HAB Method 19f)
APC Method 3.10.1. is used for dried herbal drugs. Mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.10.1 are prepared by maceration with ethanol of an appropriate concentration as specified in the individual monograph with additional heat treatment (decoction) as described below.
1 part of dried herbal drug is macerated with 20 parts of ethanol of the appropriate concentration (anhydrous,
94 per cent *m/m* – 96 per cent *V/V*,
86 per cent *m/m* – 90 per cent *V/V*,
73 per cent *m/m* – 80 per cent *V/V*,
62 per cent *m*/m – 70 per cent *V/V*,
43 per cent *m/m* – 50 per cent *V/V*,
30 per cent *m/m* – 36 per cent *V/V*,
15 per cent *m/m* – 18 per cent *V/V*),
unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph.

Unless otherwise prescribed, comminute the herbal drug, mix thoroughly with the total amount of ethanol of the appropriate concentration and heat to boiling under reflux, maintaining at boiling temperature for 30 min unless otherwise specified in the individual monograph.

Cool or allow to cool and leave the mixture to stand in a closed container for 12 – 36 h. Separate the residue from the ethanol and, if necessary, press out. In the latter case, combine the 2 liquids obtained.
Adjust to the concentrations required in the individual monograph in accordance with Ph.Eur. (2371) Method 1.1.8.

POTENTISATION

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
2 parts of the mother tincture and
8 parts of ethanol of the same concentration.

The 3rd decimal dilution (D3) is made from
1 part of the 2nd decimal dilution and
9 parts of ethanol of a reduced concentration as given below.

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced accordingly; in this process the alcohol concentration is reduced with each step in the succession 94 – 86 – 73 – 62 – 43 – 30 – 15 per cent *(m/m)* until the 15 per cent level is reached.

3.11. Viscous extracts with heat treatment

DEFINITION

Viscous extracts with heat treatment are prepared from fresh or dried herbal drugs using a fatty or mineral oil or glycerol 85 % as extraction liquid with heat.

PRODUCTION

If necessary, comminute the herbal drug. Ethanol 94 per cent *(m/m)* may be added to moisten the plant material. The prescribed quantity of the extraction liquid (mostly peanut, olive, sesame or sunflower oil, liquid paraffin, or glycerol 85 %) is added and mixed thoroughly with the herbal drug. The mixture is heated at the prescribed temperature and allowed to stand in a closed container for an appropriate time. Extraction temperature and time are prescribed in the individual monograph. Finally express and filter. If necessary, the empty space of the container is filled with a protecting gas.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS

Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Refractive index *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.6)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Peroxide value *(Ph.Eur. 2.5.5)*. Where applicable, the preparation made with a vegetable oil complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-filled, airtight container, protected from light and heat. If necessary, the empty space in the container of oil extracts is filled with an inert gas.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the dried herbal drug used,
- the extraction liquid used,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- an indication of the extraction temperature,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce viscous extracts with heat treatment

HAB Methods 12 d-g
HAB Method 57

Individual Monographs:
Cydonia oblonga, fruit, glycerol extract with heat treatment 1:2.1.

3.12. Preparations made by distillation (Distillates)

DEFINITION

Distillates are prepared from fresh plants or parts of plants or dried plants, organic or inorganic substances by steam distillation or water-and-steam distillation. The distillation can be done in the presence of other substances that will not interfere with the final composition of the distillate. This process can be repeated several times in a rhythmic sequence of evaporation/condensation. Distillated preparations can be part of a more complex formulation that is composed by several fractions. Distillated preparations can be used as starting materials or finished products and can be potentised.

PRODUCTION

According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol and 2-propanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official pharmacopoeia or another limit is justified and authorised.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Distillates and derived dosage forms carry the designation „destillata".

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce preparations made by distillation

APC Method 3.12.1 Preparations made by ethanolic distillation (related to HAB Method 52)

Distillates according to APC method 3.12.1 are prepared from fresh plants or parts of plants following the procedure given below.
Comminute the plant material. Pour 8 parts of ethanol 86 per cent (*m/m*) over 100 parts of plant mass. Leave to stand in a closed container for at least 24 h, then steam distil, ending the steam distillation when 50 parts of distillate have been collected.

The mother tincture is made from
1 part of distillate and
1 part of ethanol 15 per cent (*m/m*).

POTENTISATION
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of the mother tincture and
9 parts of alcohol 15 per cent (*m/m*).
Subsequent dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

APC Method 3.12.2 Preparations made by aqueous distillation

Distillates according to APC Method 3.12.2 are preparations of fresh or dried starting materials from mineral, vegetal and animal source, obtained by aqueous distillation.
Comminute the material. To 1 part of material add water according to the individual monograph, then heat with flame source, ending the distillation when 50 parts of distillated have been collected or according to the individual monograph.

The aqueous distillation can be done in the presence of other substances that will not interfere with the final composition of the final distillate.

3.13. Mother tinctures obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold

DEFINITION
Mother tinctures obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold are aqueous preparations from fresh or dried herbal drugs or saps from fresh herbal drugs, obtained by fermentation under cold and heat application.

PRODUCTION
Comminute the herbal drug if necessary. Add purified water. If stated in the individual monograph, add the prescribed fermenting agent.
It is also possible to ferment the expressed plant sap or the finely minced fresh plant without addition of purified water. Treat rhythmically with application of heat (generally 37°C) and cold (generally 4°C). Where required, express and filter after the time prescribed in the individual monograph. Salts, specific plant ashes, metals or minerals may be added according to the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic identification test is carried out.

TESTS
pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6).* The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5).* Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Methanol and 2-propanol *(Ph.Eur. 2.9.11)*. Maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of methanol and maximum 0.05 per cent *V/V* of 2-propanol, unless otherwise authorised by a national official pharmacopoeia, or another limit is justified and authorised.

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light, at 8 – 15°C.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the fresh herbal drug used,
- where applicable, the name of the salt, metal or mineral added,
- where applicable, the ratio of starting material to extraction liquid or of starting material to preparation,
- the designation „ferm“ (with water and fermenting agents) or „Rh“ (fermented plant sap without fermenting agents),
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce mother tinctures obtained with rhythmic application of heat and cold

HAB Method 21
HAB Method 22
HAB Methods 33
HAB Methods 34
HAB Methods 35
HAB Method 36
HAB Methods 37
HAB Methods 51

APC Method 3.13.1 (related to HAB Method 21)
Rh mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.13.1 are prepared from fresh plants generally yielding more than 50 per cent of expressed liquid, as follows:

Comminute the plants immediately after harvesting and express. Transfer the expressed juice to containers and subject to the diurnal hot-cold rhythm (“Rh”) described below until fermentation is complete.
Each morning, warm the expressed liquid to 35 – 39°C over a period of 30 – 90 min and maintain at this temperature. Each evening, cool the expressed liquid to 2 – 6°C over a period of 30 – 90 min and maintain at this temperature.
Stir the liquid for 60 – 200 min during both temperature phases at the beginning, gradually decreasing to 10 min at the end of the fermentation process. Filter as soon as fermentation has ceased.

POTENTISATION
Aqueous dilutions
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of Rh mother tincture and
9 parts of water for injections.

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

Ethanolic Dilutions
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of Rh mother tincture and
9 parts of ethanol 15 per cent *(m/m)*.

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Preparations made according to APC Method 3.13.1 carry the designation “Rh”; the same applies to preparations made from them. If ethanol 15 per cent *(m/m)* is used from the 1st decimal dilution onwards, state this on the label.

APC Method 3.13.2 (related to HAB Method 22)
Rh mother tinctures according to APC Method 3.13.2 are prepared from fresh plants, generally yielding distinctly less than 50 per cent of expressed liquid, as follows:

Comminute the plants immediately after harvesting. Subject the plant material to the diurnal hot-cold rhythm (“Rh”) for 7 – 10 days. Each morning, warm the plant material to approximately 35 – 39°C and maintain at this temperature. Each evening, cool the plant material to 2 – 6°C and maintain at this temperature.
Then express. Transfer the expressed juice to containers and subject to the diurnal hot-cold rhythm (“Rh”) as described under method 3.13.1.

POTENTISATION
Aqueous dilutions
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of Rh mother tincture and
9 parts of water for injections.

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

Ethanolic dilutions
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
1 part of Rh mother tincture and
9 parts of ethanol 15 per cent *(m/m)*.

Subsequent decimal dilutions are produced as stated for D1.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Mother tinctures made according to APC Method 3.13.2 carry the designation "Rh"; the same applies to preparations made from them. If ethanol 15 per cent *(m/m)* is used from the 1st decimal dilution onwards, state this on the label.

4. SOLID STARTING MATERIALS OBTAINED BY HEAT

Heat treatment can be applied directly to solid starting materials from botanical or zoological origin without addition of a vehicle. The heat treatment may be performed under presence or reduced presence of oxygen. Solid starting materials obtained by heat include toasted preparations (Tosta), carbons (Carbo) and ashes (Cinis).

4.1. Toasted preparations – Tosta

DEFINITION
Toasted preparations are obtained from dried plants or parts of plants or solid, dried animal matter by toasting. Toasted preparations are dry, usually brownish and have an intense and characteristic odour.

The substances to be toasted are crushed, if necessary, and are exposed to a heat source for the prescribed time. During the process water evaporates and the matter becomes brown or brownish. This is achieved through control of the heat supply, usually 170 – 250 °C and by tossing the material during this procedure. The toasted substance is powdered.
Particle size of the raw material, temperature and heating time are prescribed in the individual monograph.

Toasted substances may be potentised according to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1.

IDENTIFICATION
According to the individual monograph.

TESTS
The tests are carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable.

ASSAY
An assay is carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of herbal or animal matter used,
- the designation "tostus/a/um/", example: Spongia tosta,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce toasted preparations.

According to the individual monograph.

4.2. Carbons – Carbo

DEFINITION
Carbons are obtained from dried plants or parts of plants or dried animal matter. They are dry, brittle, and generally black substances.
The plant or animal matter is heated to a temperature usually above 200 °C under reduced presence of oxygen to produce the carbonised deposit. The carbonised substance is powdered.
Carbons may be potentised according to Ph.Eur 4.1.1.

IDENTIFICATION
The identification is carried out according to the individual monograph.

TESTS
The tests are carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable:
- Acidity or Alkalinity,
- Acid-soluble substances,
- Adsorption power,
- Alkali-soluble coloured matter,
- Cyanide,
- Ethanol-soluble substances,
- Fluorescent substances,
- Heavy metals *(e.g. Ph.Eur. 2.4.8)*,
- Loss on drying *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.32)*,
- Sulfated ash *(Ph.Eur. 2.4.14)*,
- Sulfide,
- Total ash *(Ph.Eur. 2.4.16)*,
- Zinc.

ASSAY
An assay is carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the herbal or animal matter used,
- the designation "Carbo", example: Carbo Gentianae,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce carbons

B.Hom.P. Method Br4

4.3. Ashes – Cinis

DEFINITION
Ashes are obtained from dried plants or parts of plants or dried animal matter. They are generally fine, amorphous, white, grey, beige or brown powders.

The herbal or animal matter is incinerated generally at a temperature above 500 °C.

Ashes may be potentised according to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1.

IDENTIFICATION
The identification is carried out according to the individual monograph.

TESTS
The tests are carried out according to the individual monograph, where applicable:
- Acid insoluble substances,
- Arsenic *(e.g. Ph.Eur. 2.4.2)*,
- Heavy metals *(e.g. Ph.Eur. 2.4.8)*,
- Loss on drying *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.32)*.

ASSAY
Where applicable the Cinis complies with the individual monograph.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container with a desiccant if necessary.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the herbal or animal substance used,
- the designation "Cinis", example: Cinis Tabaci,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce ashes

B.Hom.P. Method Br3

5. SOLID PREPARATIONS FROM PLANTS (DRYING ONTO A VEHICLE)

Solid preparations from plants are obtained either by drying fresh plants, plant juices or aqueous extracts onto a vehicle.

5.1. Solid preparations from fresh plants

DEFINITION
Solid preparations of fresh plants are prepared by drying fresh plant material onto suitable vehicles e.g. lactose monohydrate.

PRODUCTION
Comminute the fresh plant material, and mix thoroughly with the vehicle in order to adsorb its liquid part. Dry the mixture gently and mill if necessary.
The preparation can be potentised according to Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods 4.1.1 and 4.1.2.

IDENTIFICATION
At least one chromatographic test is carried out.

TESTS
Loss on drying *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.32)*: The solid preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Microbiological quality *(Ph.Eur. 5.1.4)*: (Non-aqueous preparations for oral use).

ASSAY
An assay with quantitative limits is performed when raw materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the plant material used,
- the quantity used,
- the vehicle used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce solid preparations from fresh plants

Ph.Eur. (2371) Method
4.1.1

APC Method 5.1.1
Preparations according to APC Method 5.1.1 are solid preparations of fresh plants prepared by drying fresh

herbal drugs onto lactose monohydrate.
Comminute the plants or parts of plants. To 1 part of the plant material add the required amount of lactose monohydrate, usually 2.9 parts unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph. Mix thoroughly. Dry the moist mixture gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly.

POTENTISATION

The preparation can be potentised according to Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods 4.1.1 and 4.1.2.
The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
3 parts of the solid preparation and
7 parts of lactose monohydrate

5.2. Solid preparations from liquids, plant juices or aqueous extracts

DEFINITION

Solid preparations of liquids are prepared by drying plant juices, tinctures, aqueous extracts or solutions or their dilutions onto suitable vehicles e.g. lactose monohydrate.
The expressed juice or the tincture from the fresh plant material or the solution is mixed thoroughly with the vehicle. The mixture is dried gently and milled if necessary.
The preparation can be potentised according to Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods 4.1.1 and 4.1.2.

PRODUCTION

According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION

At least one chromatographic test is carried out.

TESTS

Loss on drying *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.32).* The solid preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Microbiological quality *(Ph.Eur. 5.1.4).* (Non-aqueous preparations for oral use)

ASSAY

An assay with quantitative limits is performed when raw or starting materials with toxicologically or therapeutically relevant substances are used.

STORAGE

Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:

- the name of the plant material used,
- the quantity used,
- the vehicle used,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce solid preparations from liquid extracts/ plant juices

Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods (refer to potentisation)
4.1.1
4.1.2

APC Method 5.2.1

Preparations according to APC Method 5.2.1 are solid preparations from fresh plant juices prepared by drying the fresh plant juice onto lactose monohydrate or another excipient.
Add 1 part of the expressed plant juice or aqueous extract to 1.9 parts of lactose monohydrate unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph to obtain a wet granulate. Dry the wet granulate gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly. For granulation it may be necessary to concentrate the plant juice under reduced pressure.

APC Method 5.2.2

Preparations according to APC Method 5.2.2 are solid preparations from fresh plant juices prepared by drying the fresh plant juice onto lactose monohydrate or another excipient.
The expressed plant juice of 1 part of the fresh plant is added to 3 parts of lactose monohydrate unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph to obtain a wet granulate. Dry the wet granulate gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly. Before granulation it may be necessary to concentrate the plant juice under reduced pressure.

APC Method 5.2.3

Preparations according to APC Method 5.2.3 are solid preparations from aqueous extracts prepared by drying aqueous extracts of fresh plants onto lactose monohydrate or another excipient.
Mix 1 part of the comminuted fresh plants with 0.15 parts of purified water. Then express the mixture.
The expressed aqueous extract is added to 4 parts of lactose monohydrate unless otherwise prescribed in the individual monograph to obtain a wet granulate. Dry the wet granulate gently until it reaches the dryness required. Mill, if necessary, then sieve as specified in the individual monograph and remix thoroughly. Before granulation it may be necessary to concentrate the aqueous extract under reduced pressure.

6. LIQUID DILUTIONS

DEFINITION
Liquid dilutions are prepared by dissolving one or more starting materials in an appropriate vehicle. The liquid obtained may be directly potentised.

PRODUCTION
The starting material is dissolved in the appropriate vehicle. Dissolution may require heating or stirring. The separation of a residue may be necessary.

Where necessary, immediately after the dissolution the first potentisation step is carried out in accordance with the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION
Liquid dilutions are identified using a suitable method.

TESTS
Appearance *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.1, 2.2.2)*. Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits described in the individual monograph.
pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*. Where applicable, the preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16 or H 2.2.6)*. Where applicable, the liquid solution complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*. The preparation complies with the limits prescribed in the individual monograph.

ASSAY
Where applicable, liquid solutions of chemically defined starting materials are assayed.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the substance dissolved,
- the quantity dissolved,
- where applicable, the degree of potentisation,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce liquid dilutions

Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods
3.1.1
3.1.2

HAB Methods 5

7. COMPOSITIONS

Compositions are active substances which are obtained when two or more starting materials and/or preparations with or without excipients and/or vehicles are processed together in a pharmaceutical process that will lead to a new substance (unit). The rationale for composing is the anthroposophic understanding of man, nature, substance and processing. Compositions may be directly used as an active substance or can be potentised or diluted for any dosage form.

7.1. Compositions made by treating two or more starting materials by one or more pharmaceutical processes

DEFINITION
Compositions made by treating two or more starting materials or preparations by one or more pharmaceutical processes are prepared by combining starting materials in a defined ratio according to the individual monograph using a specified process (e.g. specified mixing, heat treatment, chemical process).

PRODUCTION
According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS
According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the composition,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.1

Examples (see appendix 2.6): Anis-Pyrit, Ferrum-Quarz, Hepar-Magnesium, Hepar sulfuris, Kalium aceticum comp., Plumbum mellitum, Solutio Sacchari comp. (mineral compositions according to the model of a plant).

7.2. Compositions made by treating two or more extracts or mother tinctures of one plant by one or more pharmaceutical processes

DEFINITION

Compositions made by treating two or more mother tinctures of one plant by pharmaceutical processes are prepared from extracts (mother tinctures) of the same plant species harvested at different seasons, i.e. at different stages of development. According to the individual monograph the extracts are combined in a defined ratio by a specific pharmaceutical process possibly using specific equipment. Adjustment of concentration, of pH, and of osmolality may be carried out.

PRODUCTION

According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS

According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The designation states:
- the name of the composition,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.2

HAB Method 32
HAB Method 38
See appendix 2.6, for example Viscum album compositions.

APC Method 7.2.1 (see also APC Method 3.7.1)
Compositions according to APC Method 7.2.1 are produced from fresh plants or parts of plants by the following procedure:
Finely comminute the plants or parts of plants and mix 1 part of the plant mass with 1 part of purified water. Leave to ferment at 20 to 24°C with the exclusion of air, ending the fermentation when the pH of the fermentation liquid has fallen to between 4 and 5. Then express and weigh the expressed liquid. The weight of the expressed liquid is equal to 2 parts and is mixed with 1 part of a mixture of 0.95 parts of ethanol 94 per cent (*m*/*m*) and 0.05 parts of purified water. This tincture is stored until it will undergo another pharmaceutical process with a second tincture of the same plant.
This procedure is followed for plants harvested in summer and for plants of the same species, harvested in winter.
The mother tincture is a composition, produced by unifying equal parts of the two tinctures.

The mother tincture can be potentised as follows:

The 1st decimal dilution (D1) is made from
3 parts of the mother tincture and
7 parts of alcohol 30 per cent (*m*/*m*).

The 2nd decimal dilution (D2) is made from
1 part of the 1st decimal dilution and
9 parts of alcohol 15 per cent (*m*/*m*).
Subsequent dilutions are produced as stated for D2.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

Preparations according to APC Method 7.2.1 carry the designation „ferm APC 7.2.1".

APC Method 7.2.2 Compositions of aqueous extracts and liquid preparations thereof
Compositions according to APC Method 7.2.2 are mother tinctures produced from fresh (frozen) plants or parts of plants by the following procedure.
The plants or parts of plants are comminuted in a grinder, pressed in appropriate boxes and frozen at – 10°C to – 30°C. The plants or parts of plants are combined to a specific formulation: Plants and parts of plants from winter harvest with plants from spring harvest to give the so called winter formulation. Plants from summer harvest with plants from autumn harvest to give the so called summer formulation.
5 parts of frozen plants are extracted for 1 – 4 h at 10 – 20°C with 95 parts of 0.09 % sodium chloride solution in a container with stirring. The coarse plants or plant parts are separated by centrifugation. The centrifugate is filled up to 100 parts with 0.09 percent sodium chloride solution and filtered. The winter formulation produces the so called winter extract, the summer formulation the so called summer extract. If the extract is to be stored, sterile filtration must take place.
The composition is produced by composing three parts of winter extract and one part of summer extract as described below.
The winter extract is stirred in a specially constructed gilded mixing vessel. The summer extract is allowed to drop from the top of the vessel into the vortex of the winter extract. The osmolality is adjusted by adding sodium chloride and the pH is adjusted to 6.1 – 6.3 by adding sodium hydroxide solution. If the composition is to be stored, sterile filtration must take place. The composition (mother tincture) can be used directly or

can be used for further dilutions. The addition of antioxidants or substances for pH adjustment is allowed.

Dilutions are obtained by diluting the composition. At a temperature between 10°C and 25°C the necessary amount of 0.9 percent sodium chloride solution is stirred in a vessel; the composition is dropped from the top into the vortex. The dilution series is: (Composition + sodium chloride solution) e.g. 3+2 (30 mg), 2+3 (20 mg), 1+4 (10 mg), 1+9 (5 mg), 1+49 (1mg), 1+499 (0.1 mg); 1+4999 (0.01 mg). If the dilution is to be stored, sterile filtration must take place.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The amount of herbal drug (fresh plant) which was extracted to achieve 1 mL/2 mL of the final preparation.

APC Method 7.2.3 and 7.2.4 Compositions of fermented aqueous extracts and liquid preparations thereof

Compositions according to APC Method 7.2.3 and 7.2.4 are mother tinctures produced from fresh plants or parts of plants by the following procedure.

Finely comminute the plants or parts of plants and mix 1 part of the plant mass with 1.318 parts of water for injections, 0.03 parts of sucrose, and 0.002 parts of a Lactobacillus plantarum suspension, $10^9 – 10^{10}$ cfu/mL and mix thoroughly. Leave to ferment for 3 days at 20 to 27°C with the exclusion of air. Then express and weigh the expressed liquid. If (except for the berries) gentle pressure applied to the plant residue does not achieve a final mass of extract equal to 2 parts, pour a sufficient amount of water for injections over the plant residue and express gently. Use the resulting extract to make the extract up to 2 parts. If prescribed in the individual monograph, adjust the pH to 5.0 – 6.5 by adding sodium hydroxide.

Follow the same procedure for plant material harvested in the summer and for plant material of the same species, harvested in the winter. However, for the winter harvest, process the berries and the other plant parts separately according to the method described above and use 1.328 parts of water for injections and 0.02 parts of sucrose. Also, leave the berry mixture to ferment for 4 days.

If the extracts are stored for further processing, they must comply with the test for sterility (Ph.Eur. 2.6.1).

The composition is produced by composing equal parts of the summer and the combined winter extracts as described below.

Method 7.2.3

Mix two parts of summer extract with 3 parts of water for injections.

Mix one part of winter extract of plant material and one part of extract of berries with 3 parts of water for injections.

Method 7.2.4

Mix two parts of summer extract with 3 parts of water for injections. Mix one part of winter extract of plant material and one part of extract of berries with a mixture of 0.002 parts of a metal salt trituration from the D4 potentisation step and 2.998 parts of water for injections.

Methods 7.2.3 and 7.2.4

Feed the mixture of the winter extracts continuously onto the centre of a rotating disk. At the same time, feed the summer extracts continuously onto the slightly raised edge of the disk. The blended mixture flows continually off over the edge of the disk. Filter the mixture; the filtrate is the mother tincture. If the mother tincture is stored for further processing, it must comply with the test for sterility (Ph.Eur. 2.6.1).

The dilution series is (composition or dilution + water for injections): 1+9 (20 mg), 1+19 (10 mg, corresponding to a 1:20 dilution); 1+39 (5 mg); 1 + 99 (2 mg); 1 part 1:20 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (1:200 or 1 mg); 1 part 1:200 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (1:2,000 or 0.1 mg); 1 part 1:2,000 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (1:20,000 or 0.01 mg); 1 part 1:20,000 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (1:200,000 or 0.001 mg); 1 part 1:200,000 dilution + 9 parts water for injections (0.0001 mg). To prepare the final preparation, add sodium chloride to the water for injections to obtain an isotonic solution.

Compositions produced according to methods 7.2.3 and 7.2.4 may be potentised according to chapter 8.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION

The amount of herbal drug (fresh plant) which was extracted to achieve 1 mL of the final preparation.

STORAGE

Store the mother tincture in a well-closed container at 2 – 8°C.

7.3. Compositions made by treating one or more starting materials with one or more mother tinctures which undergo one or more pharmaceutical processes together

DEFINITION
Compositions made by treating one or more starting materials with one or more mother tinctures are obtained by combining one or more starting materials with one or more stocks in a defined ratio according to the individual monograph.

PRODUCTION
According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS
According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the composition,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.3

Examples (see appendix 2.6): Cinis e fructibus Avenae sativae cum Magnesio phosphorico (1:1), Cissus-Ossa.

7.4. Compositions made by treating two or more extracts or mother tinctures and/or dilutions by one or more pharmaceutical processes

DEFINITION
Composition made by treating two or more extracts or mother tinctures and/or dilutions by pharmaceutical processes are prepared according to an individual monograph prescribing the combination of the ingredients in a defined ratio by a specific pharmaceutical process using specific equipment.

PRODUCTION
According to the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS
According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the preparation,
- the composition of the product (quantity of the ingredients),
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.4

Examples (see appendix 2.6): Onopordum acanthium, Folium rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 1 – 2 % Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø, see also Plantago lanceolata and Primula.

7.5. Compositions made by co-potentising

DEFINITION
Compositions made by co-potentising are prepared from two or more starting materials and/or preparations (e.g. mother tinctures, potencies) by co-potentising over one or more steps.

PRODUCTION
According to APC Method 8.1 or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION/TESTS
According to the nature of the composition. The components of the composition comply with the requirements of the relevant monographs.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name, quantity and potency degree of each ingredient,
- how many potentising steps were carried out on the mixture as a whole,
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce compositions according to 7.5
Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods
5.1.1
5.1.2
5.1.5

8. POTENTISED PREPARATIONS

Potentised preparations are gradually diluted substances, whereby at each diluting step a rhythmic succussion (liquid potencies) or trituration (solid or semi-solid potencies) has been carried out for a defined time. The

potentising time differs for solid and liquid potentised preparations. Astronomical aspects may be considered (e.g. solar or lunar eclipse).The preparations are defined by the number of liquid potentising or trituration steps respectively and by the ratio between the vehicle (diluting agent) and the substance to be potentised.

The potentising ratio is usually:
1 part of substance
9 parts of vehicle.

The potentising ratio for co-potentised preparations is usually:
1 part of a mixture of equal parts of active substances
9 parts of vehicle.

LIQUID POTENCIES:
The substance or mixture to be potentised is dissolved in the vehicle in the chosen ratio. Usual vehicles for liquid potencies are water (purified or water for injections), ethanol of various concentrations, glycerol or vegetable oils. Excipients might be necessary, for example to emulsify an aqueous substance into oil. After dissolution, rhythmic succussion is carried out. For the next potentising step one part of the first potency and the prescribed amount of vehicle are brought together and succussed. Further potentising is carried out in likewise manner.

SOLID POTENCIES (TRITURATIONS):
Potencies of solid substances are prepared by trituration of the substance to be potentised usually with lactose monohydrate in the prescribed ratio in a mortar with a pestle or in an adequate trituration machine.
Solid potencies can be further potentised in liquid phase, if they are soluble in a vehicle.

SEMI-SOLID POTENCIES:
Semi-solid potencies are prepared by trituration of a liquid or a solid substance to be potentised with an ointment base in the prescribed ratio in a mortar with a pestle or in an adequate trituration machine.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce potentised preparations
Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods
3.2.1 – 3
4.1.1 – 2
4.2.1 – 2
5.1.1 – 5

HAB Method 12j
HAB Method 17
B.Hom.P. Method Br5
B.Hom.P. Method Br6

The potentising specifications in Ph.Eur. monograph 2371 of Methods 1.1.1 – 1.1.11, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.2.1 – 2.2.4 and 5.1.1 – 5.1.5.

The potentising specifications in HAB methods 5, 11, 15, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39a, 39b, 45, 51, 53.

The potentising specifications in APC Methods.

8.1. Co-potentised preparations

DEFINITION
Method 8.1 is used for preparing dilutions by co-potentising two or more stocks and/or dilutions thereof, where co-potentisation consists of mixing several stocks or dilutions of stocks then potentising them together in one or more potentisation steps.

PRODUCTION
Co-potentised compositions according to APC Method 8.1 may be prepared from starting materials and/or solutions, potentised preparations and mother tinctures whose method of production is specified by a ratio of 1 part of starting material and 10 parts of extraction solvent.
When a solid potency D4 shall be potentised with liquids, it can be potentised one step according to Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods 3.2, and then be used as D5 for co-potentisation or dilution to a final concentration of 1 ppm.

Co-potentised compositions may be used to produce all types of dosage forms. Co-potentisation of mixtures according to APC Method 8.1 to produce parenteral preparations or eye drops is carried out with water for injections or an isotonic solution as diluting agent.

IDENTIFICATION, TEST, ASSAY
are carried out according to the individual monograph.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the potentised substance(s),
- where applicable, the ethanol content,
- the potentising ratio; decimal potencies may be designated as D or DH or X,
- the potency degree, example: D3 or 3 DH or 3X,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

APC Method 8.1.1 (Ph.Eur. (2371) Method 5.1.5)
Co-potentised preparations according to APC Method 8.1.1 are liquid dilutions potentised with a suitable vehicle from two or more (n) preparations, each making up 1 part of the final 10 parts. Consequently the vehicle is 10 minus n parts.

POTENTISATION
For the first co-potentisation step combine and succuss 1 part of each of the n preparations with 10 minus n parts of water or ethanol of the appropriate concentration specified under HAB H 5.3. For each further co-potentisation step the ratio is 1 part of the given composed potency and 9 parts of vehicle.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation of co-potentised compositions according to APC Method 8.1.1 and derived dosage forms states how many potentising steps were carried out on the mixture as a whole adding the expressions "rhythmically diluted".

APC Method 8.1.2 (related to Ph.Eur. (2371) Methods 5.1.1 and 5.1.2)

Co-potentised preparations according to APC Method 8.1.2. are liquid dilutions potentised with a suitable vehicle from two or more (n) preparations, each making up 1/n part of the final 10 parts. Consequently the vehicle is 9 parts.

POTENTISATION
For the first co-potentisation step combine and succuss 1/n part of each of the n preparations with 9 parts of water or ethanol of the appropriate concentration specified under HAB H 5.3. For each further co-potentisation step the ratio is 1 part of the given composed potency and 9 parts of vehicle.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation of co-potentised compositions according to APC Method 8.1.2. and derived dosage forms states how many potentising steps were carried out on the mixture as a whole.

8.2. Potentising in an ointment base

DEFINITION
Liquid and solid starting materials can be potentised within an ointment base.

PRODUCTION
According to the specific methods or the individual monograph.

IDENTIFICATION, TESTS, ASSAY
are carried out according to the individual monograph.

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
The designation states:
- the name of the potentised substance(s),
- the potentising ratio; decimal potencies may be designated as D or DH or X,
- the potency degree in the ointment,
- the reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

APC Method 8.2.1 (Ointments containing powdered solid starting materials, related to HAB Method 48)
Ointments containing powdered solid starting materials are produced with 1 part of a powdered metal, powdered mineral or a composition containing minerals and 9 parts of an ointment base leading to a homogeneous ointment. This potentising step in an ointment base results in the first decimal dilution (D1). The particle size of the powdered solid starting material must be smaller than 100 µm.
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.1 must meet the requirements of the Ph.Eur. monograph "Semi-solid preparations for cutaneous application" (0132).
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.1 can be used further to produce ointments according to HAB Method 13.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.1 carry the desigation "APC M" and the resulting decimal dilution "D1".

APC-Method 8.2.2 Ointments containing solid or liquid dilutions
Ointments containing solid or liquid dilutions are produced with 1 part of a decimal solid or liquid dilution (Dn) and 9 parts of an ointment base leading to a homogeneous ointment. The resulting decimal dilution degree is (Dn+1).
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.2. must meet the requirements of the Ph.Eur. monograph "Semi-solid preparations for cutaneous application" (0132).

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Ointments according to APC Method 8.2.2 carry the designation of the resulting degree of decimal dilution. Example: D3 or 3 DH or 3X APC 8.2.2.

8.3. Triturations

DEFINITION
Preparations according to APC Method 8.3 are triturations of solid substances with lactose monohydrate as potentising vehicle unless otherwise specified in a ratio of 1:10.

PRODUCTION
Triturate using a machine that ensures even trituration. Suitable machines include mixers with rhythmic, pulsating spatial inversion (e.g. "Turbula"), in combination with a sealable mixing vessel and appropriate grinding balls as well as other machines with rotating movements such as the ball mill.
Triturate the whole amount of vehicle with the substance to be potentised.
The trituration time depends on the machine and the chosen parameters. Trituration must be between 15 and 60 minutes. It has to be ensured, that the trituration is homogeneous and that particle size reduction is achieved.

TESTS
are carried out according to the individual monograph.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
Preparations according to APC Method 8.3 carry the designation of the resulting degree of decimal dilution. Example: D3 or 3 DH or 3X APC 8.3.

9. MIXTURES

DEFINITION
Mixtures are produced from usually two or more active substances.Vehicles and/or excipients may be added. Mixtures contain the sum of the active substances mixed together. Mixtures can also be produced from one active substance and a vehicle. A special manufacturing method is not needed (cf. compositions). Mixtures are used to facilitate the administration of more than one active substance in one single finished product. The mixture itself may be the final dosage form.

Mixtures can be classified into four categories:
9.1. Mixtures of preparations without a vehicle
9.1a. Mixtures of liquid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods.
9.1b. Mixtures of solid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods.
9.1c. Liquid and solid preparations, produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods, resulting in a liquid preparation.
9.2. Mixtures of preparations with a vehicle
9.2a. Liquid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods in which the vehicle is added in a ratio other than 1 to 10 or 1 to 100.
9.2b. Solid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods in which the vehicle is added in a ratio other than 1 to 10 or 1 to 100.
9.2c. Liquid and solid preparations, produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods, resulting in a liquid preparation, in which the vehicle is added in a ratio other than 1 to 10 or 1 to 100.
9.3. Mixtures of preparations with excipients and vehicles.
9.3a. Liquid preparations produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods with an excipient(s). Vehicles may be added.
9.3b. Liquid and solid preparations, produced according to Ph.Eur., HAB or APC Methods, resulting in a liquid preparation with an excipient(s). Vehicles may be added.
9.4. Mixtures of starting materials used as active substances and mother tinctures or preparations with or without vehicles and/or excipients.

RECOMMENDED LABELLING
- the ingredients mixed and their quantity,
- reference pharmacopoeia/codex.

Specific pharmacopoeial/APC production methods to produce mixtures
HAB Method 12
HAB Method 16

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART IIb

Individual monographs of starting materials and preparations

Table of Content
Part IIb

CYDONIA OBLONGA, FRUIT

Cydonia oblonga, Fructus
Cydonia

DEFINITION

Fresh, ripe fruit of *Cydonia oblonga* Mill. collected during late summer and autumn.

CHARACTERS

The odour is characterised by a typical flowery scent.

IDENTIFICATION

The pear-shaped variety (var. *pyriformis*) is yellow, fragrant, fuzzy, 7 – 15 cm in diameter. The gentle soft pulp is golden yellow.
The apple-shaped variety (var. *maliformis*) is yellow to greenish yellow, fuzzy, 7-15 cm in diameter and less fragrant. The pulp is characterised by stone cells.
Both varieties obtain five oblong-ovate sepals with serrate margins which are located in a depression. They are completely adnate with the 5 carpels. The 5 loculi of the core generally each contain 5 to 15 or sometimes more brown, cuneate seeds arranged in 2 vertical rows and stuck together with a mucilaginous coat.

TESTS

Foreign matter (*Ph.Eur. 2.8.2*).
As low as possible. The whole batch is checked during manufacture. Foreign matter is sorted out.

Adulteration.
Fruits from Japanese quince [*Choenomeles japonica* (Thunb.) Lindl. ex Spach, syn. *Cydonia japonica* Pers., Rosaceae] and Chinese quince [*Choenomeles speciosa* (Sweet) Nakai, Rosaceae] are 4 to 5 cm in diameter with a smooth peel and being devoid of stone cells.

PREPARATIONS

1. Heat treated aqueous preparation according to the individual monograph,
2. Heat treated preparation with glycerol according to the individual monograph,
3. Tincture obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold according to APC method 3.13 and method HAB 33b.

CYDONIA OBLONGA, FRUIT, HEAT TREATED AQUEOUS TINCTURE 1:2.1

DEFINITION

The heat treated aqueous tincture is prepared from the fresh cut fruit of *Cydonia oblonga* Mill., see Cydonia oblonga, Fruit (Cydonia oblonga, Fructus; Cydonia) APC

PRODUCTION

The heat treated aqueous tincture is prepared in a ratio of fresh fruits to purified water 1:2.1 and by heat treatment at 65 – 70°C as follows:

The whole fresh ripe fruit are cut into pieces (2 – 4 cm). To 1 part of the cut fruit add 2.1 parts of purified water and mix thoroughly. Heat to 65 – 70°C in a closed container and keep at this temperature for one hour swirling repeatedly. After cooling to 40 – 45°C separate by straining the mixture through gauze, filter the resulting liquid and process immediately.

CHARACTERS

Appearance: light yellow, slightly turbid liquid.
Odour: fruity.

IDENTIFICATION

Thin-layer chromatography *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.27)*.

Test solution. Apply 10 mL onto a cartridge filled with octadecylsilylated silica gel *RH* (particle size 55 – 110 µm, 360 mg), preconditioned sequentially with 10 mL of methanol *R* and 10 mL of water *R*. Wash the cartridge with 10 mL of water *R*. Elute with 10 mL of methanol *R*. Evaporate the eluate to dryness under reduced pressure. Dissolve the residue in 1 mL of methanol *R*.

Reference solution. Dissolve 5 mg of rutin *R*, 5 mg of hyperoside *R* and 5 mg of scopoletin *R* in 10 mL of methanol *R*.

Plate: TLC silica gel plate *R*.

Mobile phase: anhydrous formic acid *R*, water *R*, ethyl acetate *R* (15:15:70 *V/V/V*).

Application: 20 µL as bands.

Development: over a path of 10 cm.

Drying: at 105 °C for 5 min.

Detection: spray the plate while still warm with a 10 g/L solution of diphenylboric acid aminoethyl ester *R* in methanol *R*. Subsequently spray with a 50 mL/L solution of macrogol 400 *R*. Examine in ultraviolet light at 365 nm within 30 min.

Results: see below the sequence of the zones present in the chromatograms obtained with the reference solution and the test solution. Other faint zones may be present in the chromatogram obtained with the test solution.

Top of the plate	
Scopoletin: a blue zone	A blue zone A blue zone
Hyperoside: an orange zone	A strong light blue zone
Rutin: an orange zone	An orange zone
Reference solution	**Test solution**

TESTS

Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*: 1.002 to 1.022.
pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*: 3.0 to 4.0.
Dry residue *(Ph.Eur. 2.8.16)*: min. 2.5 % (3 g initial weight and dry at 105 °C for 2 hours).

STORAGE

If stored it must meet the requirements of sterility, store in well closed containers, protected from light.

CYDONIA OBLONGA, FRUIT, GLYCEROL EXTRACT WITH HEAT TREATMENT 1:2.1

DEFINITION

The glycerol extract with heat treatment is prepared from the fresh cut fruit of *Cydonia oblonga* Mill., see Cydonia oblonga, Fruit (Cydonia oblonga, Fructus; Cydonia) APC.

PRODUCTION

The glycerol extract with heat treatment is prepared in a ratio of fresh fruits to glycerol (85 per cent) 1:2.1 and by heat treatment at 65 – 70 C as follows:

The whole fresh ripe fruit are cut into pieces (2 – 4 cm). To 1 part of the cut fruit add 2.1 parts of glycerol (85 per cent) and mix thoroughly. Heat to 60 – 70°C in a closed container and keep at this temperature for one hour swirling repeatedly. After cooling to 40 – 45°C separate the mixture by straining through gauze, then filter if necessary.

CHARACTERS

Appearance: light yellow, slightly turbid, viscous liquid.
Odour: fruity.

IDENTIFICATION

Thin-layer chromatography *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.27)*.

Test solution. To 5 mL add 15 mL of water *R*. Apply the mixture onto a cartridge filled with octadecylsilylated silica gel *RH* (particle size 55 – 110 µm, 360 mg), preconditioned sequentially with 10 mL of methanol *R* and 10 mL of water *R*. Wash the cartridge with 10 mL of water *R*. Elute with 10 mL of methanol *R*. Evaporate the eluate to dryness under reduced pressure. Dissolve the residue in 0.5 mL of methanol *R*.

Reference solution. Dissolve 10 mg of rutin *R*, 10 mg of hyperoside *R* and 2 mg of scopoletin *R* in 10 mL of methanol *R*.

Plate: TLC silica gel plate *R*.

Mobile phase: anhydrous formic acid *R*, water *R*, ethylacetate *R* (15:15:70 *V/V/V*).

Application: 20 µL as bands.

Development: over a path of 10 cm.

Drying: at 105 °C for 5 min.

Detection: spray the plate while still warm with a 10 g/L solution of diphenylboric acid aminoethyl ester *R* in methanol *R*. Subsequently spray with a 50 mL/L solution of macrogol 400 *R*. Examine in ultraviolet light at 365 nm within 30 min.

Results: see below the sequence of the zones present in the chromatograms obtained with the reference solution and the test solution. Other faint zones may be present in the chromatogram obtained with the test solution.

Top of the plate	
Scopoletin: a blue zone	A blue zone A blue zone
Hyperoside: an orange zone	A strong light blue zone
Rutin: an orange zone	An orange zone
Reference solution	**Test solution**

TESTS
Relative density *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.5)*: 1.170 to 1.185.
pH *(Ph.Eur. 2.2.3)*: 3.5 to 5.0.

STORAGE
Protected from light.

CYDONIA OBLONGA, FRUIT, MOTHER TINCTURE OBTAINED BY RHYTHMIC APPLICATION OF HEAT AND COLD CYDONIA OBLONGA E FRUCTIBUS FERM 33B

DEFINITION
The tincture obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold is prepared from the fresh minced fruit of *Cydonia oblonga* Mill., see Cydonia oblonga, Fruit (Cydonia oblonga, Fructus; Cydonia) APC.

PRODUCTION
The tincture obtained by rhythmic application of heat and cold is prepared according to HAB method 33b (APC method 3.13).

CHARACTERS
Appearance: slightly yellow liquid.
Odour: sour, fruity.

IDENTIFICATION
Thin-layer chromatography (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.27*)

Test solution. Apply 2 mL of the tincture onto a cartridge filled with octadecylsilylated silica gel *RH* (sorbens mass 500 mg, 3 mL reservoir) preconditioned sequentially with 2 mL of methanol *R* and 2 mL of water *R*. Wash the cartridge with 10 mL of water *R*. Elute with 10 mL of ether *R*. The eluate is evaporated to dryness. Dissolve the residue in 0.5 mL of methanol *R*.

Reference solution. Dissolve 10 mg of caffeic acid *R* and 10 mg of hyperoside *R* in 10 mL of methanol *R*.

Plate: TLC silica gel plate *R*.

Mobile phase: anhydrous formic acid *R*, water *R*, ethyl acetate *R* (10:10:80 *V/V/V*).

Application: 60 µL of test solution and 10 µL of reference solution, as bands.

Development: over a path of 8 cm.

Drying: in air.

Detection: spray with a 10 g/L solution of diphenylboric acid aminoethyl ester *R* in methanol *R*. Subsequently spray with a 50 g/L solution of macrogol 400 *R* in methanol *R*. Examine in ultraviolet light at 365 nm after 30 min.

Results: See below the sequence of the zones present in the chromatograms obtained with the reference solution and the test solution. Other faint zones may be present in the chromatogram obtained with the test solution.

Top of the plate	
Caffeic acid: a light blue zone	A light blue zone
Hyperoside: an orange yellow zone	A light blue zone
Reference solution	**Test solution**

TESTS

Relative density (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.5*): 1.001 to 1.013.

Dry residue (*based on Ph.Eur. 2.2.32 d*): minimum 1.0 per cent, determined on 1.000 g of mother tincture by drying for 4 to 5 hours at 105 °C.

Calculate the dry residue (per cent *m/m*) from the expression:

$$\frac{(m_3 - m_1)}{m_2} \cdot 100$$

m_1 = mass of the crucible used, in grams;
m_2 = mass of the mother tincture used, in grams;
m_3 = mass of the crucible containing the mother tincture after drying, in grams.

pH (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.3*): 3.0 to 4.2.

STORAGE

In a well closed container at a temperature of max 15 °C.

LEVICO WATER

Aqua Levici
Levico

DEFINITION

Naturally occurring spring water from the source Levico (Italy).

Content:

- *Arsenic*: 4 – 8 ppm
- *Iron*: 1000 – 2500 ppm

CHARACTERS

Appearance: colourless to yellowish-brown liquid, usually clear, a slight sediment may occur.

Odour: almost odourless.

IDENTIFICATION

A. Identification of arsenic by atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*), see Assay.

Results: the absorbance obtained with the test solution is not below the absorbance obtained with the reference solution with the lowest concentration.

B. Identification of iron by atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*), see Assay.

Results: the absorbance obtained with the test solution is not below the absorbance obtained with the reference solution with the lowest concentration.

C. Identification of copper by atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*, Method I).

Test solution. To 1.0 mL add 0.200 mL nitric acid *R* and dilute to 10.0 mL with water *R*.

Reference solution. Prepare the reference solutions (0.5, 1.0, 2.0 and 4.0 ppm Cu) using copper standard solution *R*, diluted as necessary with a 5 per cent *(V/V)* solution of nitric acid *R*. Alternatively, commercially available copper standard solutions for atomic absorption spectrometry can be used.

Source: copper hollow-cathode lamp using a transmission band preferably of 0.5 nm.

Wavelength: 324.8 nm.

Flame: air-acetylene.

Results: the absorbance obtained with the test solution is not below the absorbance obtained with the reference solution with the lowest concentration.

D. To 0.5 mL add 4.5 mL of water *R*. The solution gives reaction a on sulfates (*Ph.Eur. 2.3.1*).

TESTS

Relative density (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.5*): 1.004 to 1.015.

pH (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.3*): 1.5 to 2.5.

ASSAY

Arsenic: 4 ppm to 8 ppm.

Atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*, Method I).
Test solution. To 0.200 mL add 2.00 mL nitric acid *R* and dilute to 100 mL with water *R*.
Reference solutions. Prepare the reference solutions (5.0, 10.0, 15.0 and 20.0 ppb As) using arsenic standard solution *R*, diluted as necessary with a 5 per cent *(V/V)* solution of nitric acid *R*. Alternatively, commercially available arsenic standard solutions for atomic absorption spectrometry can be used.
Source: arsenic hollow-cathode lamp using a transmission band preferably of 0.5 nm.
Wavelength: 193.7 nm.
Atomisation device: graphite furnace.
Calculate the content of arsenic in mg/kg from the expression:

$$X\,[ppm] = \left(\frac{A_1 \cdot F_1}{F_2 \cdot}\right) / 1000$$

A_1: measured concentration of arsenic in µg/L
F_1: 100 mL (dilution factor)
F_2: 0.200 mL

Iron: 1000 ppm to 2500 ppm.
Atomic absorption spectrometry (*Ph.Eur. 2.2.23*, Method I).
Test solution. To 0.500 mL add 2.00 mL nitric acid *R* and dilute to 100 mL with water *R*.
Reference solutions. Prepare the reference solutions (5.0, 10.0, 15.0 and 20.0 ppm Fe) using iron standard solution *R*, diluted as necessary with a 5 per cent *(V/V)* solution of nitric acid *R*. Alternatively, commercially available iron standard solutions for atomic absorption spectrometry can be used.
Source: iron hollow-cathode lamp using a transmission band preferably of 0.2 nm.
Wavelength: 372.0 nm.
Flame: air-acetylene.
Calculate the content of iron in mg/kg from the expression:

$$X\,[ppm] = \frac{A_2 \cdot F_1}{F_2 \cdot}$$

A_2: measured concentration of iron in mg/L
F_1: 100 mL (dilution factor)
F_2: 0.500 mL

STORAGE
Store in a well-closed container, protected from light.

PREPARATIONS
According to Ph.Eur., monograph 2371 Methods 3.1.1, 3.1.2.

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART III

Dosage forms

Table of Content
Part III

Dosage forms
Principally an anthroposophic medicinal product can be administered in every dosage form, including external (topical), internal and parenteral dosage forms, with or without excipients.
A dosage form of an anthroposophic medicinal product complies with any relevant dosage form monograph and any relevant test for that dosage form as described in the European Pharmacopoeia or in pharmacopoeias currently used officially in the EU Member States.

Main dosage forms for anthroposophic medicinal products and concerning references to official pharmacopoeias:

Main dosage forms for oral use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Capsules	Capsules	Ph.Eur. (*0016*)
Granules	Granules	Ph.Eur. (*0499*)
Homoeopathic Pillules, coated	Globuli velati	Ph.Eur. (*1038, 2786 Draft*), HAB Method 39
Homoeopathic Pillules, impregnated	Pillules	Ph.Eur. (*1038*, *2079*), HAB Method 10
Tablets	Tablets	Ph.Eur. (*1038*, *0478*), HAB Method 9
Powders, oral	Trituration	Ph.Eur. (*1165*)
Oral drops	Oral drops	Ph.Eur. (*0672*)
Syrups	Syrups	Ph.Eur. (*0672*)
Oral solution	Mother tincture, Dilution	Ph.Eur. (*0672*)

Main dosage forms for cutaneous use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Creams	Creams	Ph.Eur. (*0132*)
Ointments	Ointments	Ph.Eur. (*0132*), HAB Methods 13 and 48
Gels	Gels	Ph.Eur. (*0132*), HAB Method 13
Lotions	Lotions	B.P., Ph.Eur. (*0927*)
Oils	Oils	HAB Methods 12, Ph.Eur. (*0927*)

Main dosage forms for cutaneous use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Liquid preparations (other)	Tinctures for external use, external emulsions, suspensions	Ph.Eur. (*0927*), HAB Methods 12
Powders	Powders	Ph.Eur. (*1166*)

Main dosage forms for auricular use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Ear drops	Ear drops	Ph.Eur. (*0652*)

Main dosage forms for ophthalmic use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Eye drops	Eye drops	Ph.Eur. (*1163*), HAB Method 15
Semi-solid eye preparations	Eye ointments	Ph.Eur. (*1163*)

Main dosage forms for nasal use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Nasal drops, solution	Nasal drops	Ph.Eur. (*0676*), HAB Method 45
Nasal spray, solution	Nasal spray	Ph.Eur. (*0676*)

Main dosage forms for oromucosal use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Gels	Gels	Ph.Eur. (*1807*)
Solutions	Solutions	Ph.Eur. (*1807*)
Sprays	Sprays	Ph.Eur. (*1807*)
Pillules	Pillules	Ph.Eur. (*1038, 2079, 2786 Draft*), HAB Methods 10 and 39

Main dosage forms for vaginal use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Gels	Gels	Ph.Eur. (*1164*)
Semi-solid vaginal preparations	Globules	Ph.Eur. (*1164*)
Vaginal tablets	Vagitories	Ph.Eur. (*1164*)

Main dosage forms for rectal use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Suppositories	Suppositories	Ph.Eur. (*1145*), HAB Method 14

Main dosage forms for parenteral use		**Relevant monograph(s) in (*Monograph number*):**
Standard term	**Traditional name**	
Injections	Liquid dilutions for injection, ampoules, Solutions for injection	Ph.Eur. (*0520*), HAB Method 11

APC Pillules containing lactose
(related to HAB Method 10)
APC Pillules containing lactose are pillules made by applying one or more potentised liquid preparations to saccharose pillules, which may contain up to 5 per cent of lactose. The potentising ratio usually is 1:100 (*v/m* or *m/m)*. The ethanol concentration of the potentised liquid preparation(s) is at least 60 per cent *(m/m)*. If this is not the case and interactions are excluded, the last potentisation step for decimal potentised preparations must be carried out with ethanol of at least 62 per cent *(m/m)*. In case incompatibilities are expected, use ethanol of lower concentration.
Preformed pillule sizes Ph.Eur. 3 and 6:
Ph.Eur. size 3: 110 to 130 pillules weigh 1 g
Ph.Eur. size 6: 20 to 28 pillules weigh 1 g.
Dry the pillules after impregnation in air.

RECOMMENDED DESIGNATION
the designation states:
the amount of potentised preparation(s),
the potency degree,
the potentising ratio in case other than 1:100.

INDEX LIST OF TERMS OF PART I, II AND III

ANTHROPOSOPHIC PHARMACEUTICAL CODEX APC

PART IV
Appendices

Table of Content
Part IV

Note concerning appendix 2.3.
Animal substances marked with "*" belong to category A materials according to "Note for guidance on minimising the risk of transmitting animal spongiform encephalopathy agents via human and veterinary medicinal products" if sourced e.g. from cattle *Bos taurus* L. Though sourcing from animals below 6 months of age from herds not fed with meat bone meal has been practice up to now in the field of concerning anthroposophic quality management, pharmaceutical manufacturers must continuously adapt their sourcing to the requirements of the Note for guidance, such as changing the donor animal. The APC Committee needs to reflect the existing practice and will adapt to implemented changes.

References concerning nomenclature in appendices 2.1. to 2.6.

Bertsch K.
Flora von Südwest-Deutschland.
Stuttgart: Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft mbH; 1962.

Chmelar J, Meusel W.
Die Weiden Europas.
Wittenberg Lutherstadt: Ziemsen-Verlag; 2004.

Erhardt W, Götz E, Bödeker N, Seybold S. Zander:
Handwörterbuch der Pflanzennamen.
Stuttgart: Eugen Ulmer; 2008.

HagerROM 2006. Hagers
Handbuch der Drogen und Arzneistoffe.
Heidelberg: Springer Medizin Verlag; 2006.

Harms H.
Die Mistel und ihre Verbreitung in Ostwestfalen.
Mitt. Dt. Dendrologischen Gesellschaft; 1973.

Hartmann Th.
Anatomische und morphologische Untersuchungen zum Wechselverhältnis von Mistelpflanzen und ihren Wirtsgehölzen am Beispiel der Tannenmistel und der Kiefermistel. [Dissertation].
Technische Universität Berlin; 1994.

Moberg R, Holmasen I.
Flechten von Nord- und Mitteleuropa.
Ein Bestimmungsbuch.
Stuttgart: Gustav Fischer; 1992.

Roberts WL, Rapp GR Jr, Weber J.
Encyclopedia of Minerals.
New York: Van Nostrand; 1974.

Jäger EJ (Hrsg.).
In: Rothmaler W.
Exkursionsflora von Deutschland.
Heidelberg: Springer Spektrum; 2011.

Schindler H, Helma F.
Tiere in der Pharmazie und Medizin.
Stuttgart: Hippokrates-Verlag; 1961.

Schmeil O, Fitschen J.
Flora von Deutschland und angrenzender Länder.
Heidelberg: Quelle & Meyer Verlag; 2006.

Schweingruber FH.
Anatomie europäischer Hölzer.
Bern/ Stuttgart: Haupt; 1990

Bresinsky A, Körner C, Kadereit JW,
Neuhaus G, Sonnewald U.
Strasburger Lehrbuch der Botanik.
Heidelberg: Springer Spektrum; 2008.

Teuscher E.
Biogene Arzneimittel.
Stuttgart: Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft mbH; 1997.

Note concerning the references for usage in anthroposophic medicine in appendices 2.1. to 2.6.
The references given in the columns to the right in the appendices 2.1 to 2.6 aim to provide evidence, that the particular starting material is known and has been part of the medicinal tradition in anthroposophic medicine.

Where available, the monographs of the Commission C for medicinal products for human use dealing with the anthroposophic therapeutic direction (according to §25 of the German Drug Law) published in the German Federal Gazette (Bundesanzeiger) have been referred to. Where more than one monograph could be referred to, only one has been included. Not all starting materials are mentioned in the Commission C monographs, because on the one hand its work stopped in 1994 after the 5th amendment of the German Drug law prior to completion work. On the other hand a number of starting materials in the lists are only known in the anthroposophic medicine tradition in countries other than Germany. The Commission C monographs also refer to specific and composed active substances as well as existing pharmaceutical products. A number of references from other sources may refer generically to particular raw or starting materials, sometimes without linking to specific active substances. The latter references show that the raw or starting material has been considered in therapeutic and pharmaceutical grounds in anthroposophic medicine. They may however also refer to specific active substances.

Where there is no reference, the particular starting material has not yet been presented or discussed in publications. However anthroposophic pharmaceutical manufacturers place medicinal products on the market obtained from those starting materials. The IAAP sees it as its task to promote the writing of publications, to support the relevance of the starting material in anthroposophic medicine. Much work still needs to be done.

References concerning the use in anthroposophic medicine in appendices 2.1. to 2.6.

Der Merkurstab
(Zeitschrift für anthroposophische Medizin – Journal of Anthroposophic Medicine).
Filderstadt: Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Ärzte in Deutschland (Society of anthroposophic doctors in Germany).

Gardin N Schleier R.
Vademecum, medicamentos antroposoficos.
São Paulo-SP: João de Barra Editora Ltda; 2009.
Portugese.

Glöckler M.
Anthroposophische Arzneitherapie
(Anthroposophic Therapy with Medicinal Products).
Stuttgart: Publisher Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft; 2010.

International Federation of Anthroposophic Medical Associations, IVAA.
Statement concerning starting materials of animal origin not yet mentioned in published anthroposophic medical literature or in published official regulatory documents concerning anthroposophic medicinal products.
Brussels: printed in APC Appendix I; 2013.

Monographs of the Commission C for medicinal products for human use dealing with the anthroposophic therapeutic direction (according to §25 of the German Drug Law) published in the German Federal Gazette (Bundesanzeiger). Publication as compilation: Anthroposophische Arzneimittel, Aufbereitungsmonographien der Kommission C, published by Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Ärzte in Deutschland e.V. (Society of anthroposophic doctors in Germany registered association) on behalf of the Medical Section at the Goetheanum, Dornach/ Switzerland; 1999.

Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Ärzte in Deutschland e.V. and Medizinische Sektion der Freien Hochschule für Geisteswissenschaft Dornach. Vademecum Anthroposophische Arzneimittel. Filderstadt (Germany); 2011; 3rd edition 2013.

IVAA Internationale Vereinigung Anthroposophischer Ärztegesellschaften
International Federation of Anthroposophic Medical Associations
Fédération Internationale des Associations Médicales Anthroposophiques

Statement concerning starting materials of animal origin not yet mentioned in published anthroposophic medical literature or in published official regulatory documents concerning anthroposophic medicinal products

Anthroposophic medicinal products containing preparations from starting materials of animal origin belong to the range of anthroposophic therapeutics.[1]

Most of these starting materials and/or the anthroposophic medicinal products concerned are mentioned in anthroposophic medical literature or in official regulatory documents. A certain number of these however are not mentioned in such references, although belonging to the range of anthroposophically used starting materials of animal origin. The anthroposophic medicinal products concerned are available to doctors.[2]

This statement confirms the anthroposophic therapeutic usage and relevance of these starting materials.[3]

The starting materials of animal origin are listed on the following papers.[4]

For the IVAA

Dr. Peter Zimmermann
Dr. Andreas Arendt

15.02.2013

[1] Girke M. Innere Medizin. 2. edition. Berlin: Salumed Verlag; 2012.
[2] Jütte R. Organpräparate in der Geschichte der „Schulmedizin", der Homöopathie und der Anthroposophischen Medizin. Der Merkurstab 2009; 1: 49–60.
[3] Roemer F. Sommer M. Zur Bedeutung der potenzierten Organpräparate in der anthroposophischen Therapierichtung. Der Merkurstab 1998; Sonderheft Organpräparate.
[4] Gesellschaft Anthroposophischer Ärzte in Deutschland e.V. and Medizinische Sektion der Freien Hochschule für Geisteswissenschaft Dornach. Vademecum Anthroposophische Arzneimittel. 2. edition. Filderstadt (Germany); 2011.

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition
Aorta	*Oryctolagus cuniculus L.*	Aorta from the rabbit
Aranea avicularis	*Avicularia avicularia L*	Whole bird spider
Arteria basilaris	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria basilaris from the calf
Arteria brachialis	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria brachialis from the calf
Arteria coeliaca	*see Truncus coeliacus*	
Arteria pulmonalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria pulmonalis from the calf
Arteria renalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria renalis from the calf
Articulatio cubiti	*Bos taurus L.*	Elbow joint with parts from the bones that form the joint, joint cartilage, parts of joint capsule, synovia and parts of the ligaments from the calf
Articulatio radiocarpea	*Bos taurus L.*	Radiocarpal joint with parts of the bones, cartilage, ligaments and joint capsule that form the proximal carpal joint from the calf
Articulatio temporomandibularis	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the os mandibulare and of the os temporale in the joint area, of the joint capsule, of the ligaments, of cartilage, as well as synovia from the calf
Articulationes intercarpeae	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the bones forming the joint, of the cartilage like surface of the articulation, as well as synovia from the calf
Articulationes intervertebrales cervicales	*Bos taurus L.*	Region of the cervix: Parts of the bone process that participate to the intervertebral joints, cartilage and joint capsules, as well as synovia from the calf
Articulationes intervertebrales lumbales	*Bos taurus L.*	Region of the loin: Parts of the bone process that participate to the intervertebral joints, cartilage and joint capsules, as well as synovia from the calf
Asterias rubens	*Asterias rubens L.*	The whole starfish
Atlas	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the Atlas (1. cervical) from the calf
Axis	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the Axis (2. cervical) from the calf
Blatta orientalis	*Blatta orientalis L*	The whole fresh or dried animal
Cartilago articularis coxae	*Bos taurus L.*	Cartilage of the hip joint from the calf
Cervix uteri	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the neck of the womb from the cow
Circulus arteriosus cerebri	*Bos taurus L.*	Circulus arteriosus cerebri of the pituitary shaft from the calf
Coccus cacti	*Dactylopius coccus Costa*	The dried, fertilized, female of Dactylopius coccus Costa
Columna anterior	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the columna anterior of the spinal chord from the calf
Columna posterior	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the columna posterior of different parts of the spinal chord from the calf
Cornu Caprae ibecis	*Capra ibex L.*	Horn from the ibex

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition
Dactylopius coccus	see *Coccus cacti*	
Dens	*Bos taurus L.*	Teeth from the calf
Diencephalon	*Bos taurus L.*	Diencephalon from the calf
Ductus deferens	*Bos taurus L.*	Ductus deferens from the calf
Dura mater encephali	*Bos taurus L.*	Dura mater encephali from the calf
Elaps	*Micrurus corallinus Merrem*	Poison from Micrurus corallinus Merrem
Endocardium	*Bos taurus L.*	Endocardium from the calf
Epididymis	*Bos taurus L.*	Left epididymis from the bull
Erytrocytes	*Equus przewalskii f. caballus Poliakov*	Erythrocytes from the blood of the horse
Favus	*Apis mellifera L.*	Honey combs with pollen
Folliculi lymphatici aggregati	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Parts of Peyers's patch of the small intestine from the pig
Galea aponeurotica	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the superficial fascia of the forehead from the calf
Glandula parotis	*Bos taurus L.*	Glandular tissue of the body of the parotid gland from the calf
Glandula suprarenalis (Cortex)	*Bos taurus L.*	Glandula suprarenalis (cortex) from the calf
Glandula suprarenalis (Medulla)	*Bos taurus L.*	Medulla glandulae suprarenalis of both adrenal glands from the calf
Glucogenum	*Oryctolagus cuniculus L.*	Glycogen from the rabbit liver
Gyrus cinguli	*Bos taurus L.*	Gyrus cinguli from the calf
Hepar	*Oryctolagus cuniculus L.*	Liver from the rabbit
Jejunum	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Jejunum from the pig
Keratinum Equi	*Equus przewalskii f. caballus Poliakov*	Hoof from the horse
Lac vaccae	*Bos taurus L.*	Fresh cow's milk
Ligamentum longitudinale anterius	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the ligamentum longitudinale anterius of thoracic and lumbar regions of the spine from the calf
Lingua	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the tongue muscles, mucous membrane and papillae from the calf
Liquor cerebrospinalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Liquor cerebrospinalis from the calf
Mephitis putorius	*Mephitis mephitis Schreb.*	Liquid secretion of anal glands from Mephitis mephitis Schreb.
Moschus	*Moschus moschiferus L.*	Secretion of bursa from male Moschus moschiferus L.

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition
Musculi glutaei	*Bos taurus L.*	Gluteal muscles from the calf
Musculus soleus-Komplex	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the musculus soleus-complex, musculus soleus, musculus fibularis (peronaeus) longus, musculus gastrocnemius from the calf
Mygale avicularis	*see Aranea avicularis*	
Naja tripudians	*Naja naja L.*	Carefully dried poison from Naja naja L.
Nervus abducens	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus abducens from the calf
Nervus accessorius	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus accessorius from the calf
Nervus femoralis	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus femoralis from the calf
Nervus hypoglossus	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus hypoglossus from the calf
Nervus pudendus	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus pudendus from the calf
Nervus radialis	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus radialis from the calf
Nervus tibialis	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus tibialis from the calf
Nervus ulnaris	*Bos taurus L.*	Nervus ulnaris from the calf
Oesophagus	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Oesophagus from the pig
Ossa longa	*Bos taurus L.*	Ossa longa from the calf
Ossicula auditus	*Bos taurus L.*	Auditory bones from the calf
Papillae duodeni	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Papilla duodeni region of the small intestine from the pig
Pars pallida	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the base of the brain from the calf
Patella	*Bos taurus L.*	Patella from the calf
Pelvis renalis (et Ureter)	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the pelvis renalis and ureter from the calf
Penis	*Bos taurus L.*	Penis from the bull
Pia mater encephali	*Bos taurus L.*	Pia mater encephali from the calf
Plexus lumbalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Plexus lumbalis from the calf
Plexus rectalis	*see Plexus haemorrhoidalis*	
Portio vaginalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Portio vaginalis from the cow
Renes, regio pyelorenalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of tissue from the pelvis renalis and medulla renalis from the calf
Sclera	*Bos taurus L.*	Sclera from the calf
Sinus cavernosus-Komplex	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the sinus cavernosus-complex; sinus cavernosus, nervus opticus, nervus oculomotorius, nervus trochlearis, nervus trigeminus and nervus abducens from the calf
Tarantula hispanica	*Lycosa hispanica*	The whole spider Lycosa tarantula L., Allocosa fasciiventris Duf., or Hogna hispanica Walck.
Thrombocytes	*Equus przewalskii f. caballus Poliakov*	Thrombocytes from the blood of the horse
Tonsilla pharyngea	*Bos taurus L.*	Tonsilla pharyngea from the calf

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition
Trachea	*Bos taurus L.*	Trachea from the calf
Truncus coeliacus	*Bos taurus L.*	Arteria coeliaca (Truncus coeliacus) from the calf
Truncus encephali	*Bos taurus L.*	Brain stem from the calf
Truncus encephali	*Bos taurus L.*	Hypothalamus, thalamus, corpora quadrigemina, pons, medulla oblongata from the calf
Tunica mucosa intestini tenuis	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Mucosa from the different regions of the small intestine from the pig
Tunica mucosa recti	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Tunica mucosa recti from the pig
Tunica mucosa ventriculi	*Sus scrofa domestica L.*	Mucosa from the different regions of the stomach from the pig
Ureter	*Bos taurus L.*	Ureter from the calf
Vagina	*Bos taurus L.*	Vagina from the cow
Valva trunci pulmonalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Valva trunci pulmonalis from the calf
Valvula aortae	*Bos taurus L.*	Valva aortae from the calf
Valvula mitralis	*Bos taurus L.*	Valva mitralis from the calf
Vena cava	*Bos taurus L.*	Parts of the vena cava cranialis and vena cava caudalis from the calf
Vena portae	*Bos taurus L.*	Vena portae from the calf
Vena tibialis	*Bos taurus L.*	Vena tibialis from the calf
Vertebra cervicalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Vertebra cervicalis from the calf
Vertebra coccygea	*Bos taurus L.*	Vertebra coccygea from the calf
Vertebra lumbalis	*Bos taurus L.*	Vertebra lumbalis from the calf

APPENDIX 2.1

List of minerals, rocks and natural waters

Additional Information, see p. 21

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph (date)	Other
Amber	Succinum (Bernstein)		Fossilized tree resin	HAB	Succinum (07.04.1988)	
Amethyst	(Amethyst)		A violet variety of quartz (SiO_2)		Tropaeolum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Antimonite			See Stibnite		Antimonit (02.09.1987)	
Apatite	Apatit	Apatite	The natural mineral	HAB	Apatit (05.12.1989)	
Agate water	(Achatwasser)		Water existing inside an undamaged Agate geode			Der Merkurstab 2009; 62(6): 605-619
Aqua maris	(Meerwasser)		See Seawater			
Aragonite	(Aragonit)	Aragonite	The natural mineral (calcium carbonate; chem.: $CaCO_3$)			
Arandisite	(Arandisit)	Arandisite	The natural mineral (complex tin silicate)		Arandist (02.03.1991)	
Argentite	Argentit	Argentite	The natural mineral	HAB	Argentit (05.12.1989)	
Argentum	(Silber)	Argent natif	The natural mineral (naturally occurring silver with traces of other elements)		Argentum metallicum (04.06.1986)	
Argillaceous Shale	Lapis sectilis, (Tonschiefer)	Lapis sectilis	The natural very fine-grained clayey rock (consisting of clay minerals, quartz, feldspar, mica, commonly chlorite, graphite and others)			
Arsenopyrite	Arsenopyrit	Arsenopyrite	The natural mineral (arsenic-iron sulfide)			Vademecum: Arsenopyrit
Aurum	(Gold)	Or natif	The natural mineral (naturally occurring gold with traces of other elements)		Aurum metallicum (04.06.1986)	
Barysilite	Barysilit		The natural mineral (Lead manganese silicate)		Barysilit (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	
Basalt	(Basalt)		The naturally occurring, fine-grained dark gray to black volcanic rock (consisting of plagioclase, pyroxene and others)			

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph (date)	Other
Berthierite	Berthierit	Berthierite	The natural mineral (antimony-iron sulfide; chem.: $FeSb_2S_4$)			
Bolus alba	(Bolus)		See Kaolinite			
Calcite	(Kalzit)	Calcite	The natural mineral (calcium carbonate; chem.: $CaCO_3$)			
(Calx jurassica)	(Jurakalk)		The natural rock Limestone from Jura period (mainly consisting of calcite)			
Carnelian	(Karneol)		The natural mineral (a red variety of silicic acid with traces of iron oxide)			
Cassiterite	(Kassiterit, Zinnstein)	Cassitérite	The natural mineral (tin oxide; chem.: SnO_2)		Kassiterit (07.04.1988)	
Chlorargyrite	(Chlorargyrit)		The natural mineral (silver chloride; chem.: AgCl)		Cartilago/Hornerz comp. (05.12.1989)	
Cerite	(Cerit)		The natural mineral (complex silicate of rare earth elements (cerium, lanthanum and others) and calcium, magnesium and iron)		Cor/Crataegus comp. (02.03.1991)	
Cerussite	Cerussit	Cérusite	The natural mineral	HAB	Cerussit (07.04.1988)	
Chalcedony	(Chalcedon) (Chalzedon)		The natural mineral (silicic acid; chem.: SiO_2)			
Chalcocite	(Chalkosin)	Chalcosine	The natural mineral	HAB	Thyreoidea comp. (03.07.1992)	
Chalcopyrite	(Chalkopyrit)	Chalcopyrite	The natural mineral (copper-iron sulfide; chem.: $CuFeS_2$)			
Chrysolite	(Chrysolith)	Chrysolithe	The natural mineral	HAB	Chrysolith comp. (25.10.1994)	
Chrysoprase	(Chrysopras)		The natural mineral (silicic acid with small amounts of nickel)			
Cinnabar	(Zinnober) Cinnabarit	Cinnabaris naturale	The natural mineral	HAB	Zinnober (02.09.1987)	
Cuprite	Cuprit	Cuprite	The natural mineral	HAB	Cuprit (02.03.1991)	

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph (date)	Other
Diamond	(Diamant)		The natural mineral (Carbon; chem.: C, most with traces of iron and other elements)			
Diaspore	(Diaspor)		The natural mineral (aluminium oxide hydroxide; chem.: AlOOH)			
Dioptase	Dioptas	Dioptase	The natural mineral (copper silicate; chem.: $Cu_6Si_6O_{18}·6H_2O$)	HAB	Dioptas (12.09.1992)	
Dyscrasite	Dyskrasit	Dyscrasite	The natural mineral	HAB	Dykrasit (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	
Emerald	(Smaragd)		A green variety of beryl (aluminium-beryllium silicate; chem.: $Al_2Be_3(Si_6O_{18})$, coloured by trace amounts of chromium and sometimes vanadium			
Ferrum sidereum	(Meteoreisen)	Ferrum sidereum	See Iron meteorite = meteoric iron			
Ferrum silicicum			See Nontronite			
Flint	(Flint, Feuerstein)	Silex	The natural mineral (chem.: silicic acid SiO_2)		Lapis Cancri/Flintstein (07.04.1988)	
Fluorite	Fluorit (Flussspat)	Fluorite	The natural mineral	HAB	Fluorit (02.09.1987)	
Galena	Galenit (Bleiglanz)	Galène	The natural mineral	HAB	Bleiglanz/Secale comp. (12.09.1992)	
Garnet	(Granat)		The natural mineral: Almandine (iron-aluminium silicate; chem.: $Fe_3Al_2(SiO_4)_3$) or other varieties			Der Merkurstab 2004; 57(1): 57-58
(Glacies Mariae)			See selenite			
Gneiss	(Gneis)		The natural pale rock (Gneiss from Gastein (A); consisting of quartz, feldspar, mica and others); syn.: Lapis albus			
Granite	(Granit)	Granit	The natural rock (consisting of quartz, feldspar and mica and others)		Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp. (05.12.1989)	
Graphite	Graphites (Graphit)	Graphites	The natural mineral	HAB	Graphites (07.04.1988)	

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph (date)	Other
Hematite	Hämatit	Hématite	The natural mineral	HAB	Ferrum rosatum/ Graphites (03.07.1992)	
Halite	Halit		The natural mineral	HAB	Halit (07.04.1988)	
Hekla Lava			See Lava			
Heliotrope	(Heliotrop)		A green variety of chalcedony with red inclusions (silicic acid; chem.: SiO_2 with iron oxide)			
Hyacinth	(Hyazinth)		See Zircon			
Hydrargyrum	(Quecksilber)		See Mercurius vivus naturalis			
Iron meteorite	Ferrum sidereum (Meteoreisen)	Ferrum sidereum	The natural meteoric iron	HAB	Ferrum sidereum (04.06.1986)	
Jasper	(Jaspis)		A red variety of chalcedony (silicic acid; chem.: SiO_2 with iron oxide)			
Kaolinite	(Kaolin, weißer Ton)		The natural mineral (aluminium silicate; chem.: $Al_4[(OH)_8/Si_4O_{10}]$; syn.: China clay, Kaolinum ponderosum	Ph. Eur.	Bolus alba comp. (02.03.1991)	
Kassiterite			See Cassiterite			
Katoptrite	(Katoptrit)		The natural mineral (complex manganese-antimony-iron silicate)			
Kieserite	(Kieserit)	Kiesérite	The natural mineral	HAB	Kieserit (12.09.1992)	
Lapis albus	(Gneiss)		See Gneiss			
Lapis sectilis	(Tonschiefer)		See Argillaceous Shale			
Lava	Hekla Lava (Lava)	Hekla lava	The natural rock from volcano Hekla (Iceland) (consisting of different silicates of calcium, magnesium, aluminium and sodium)			
Levico water	Levico	Levico	Mineral water from the source Levico, Italy	APC	Levico (04.06.1986)	
Magnesite	Magnesit	Magnésite	The natural mineral	HAB	Magnesit/Mamma comp. (12.09.1992)	
Malachite	Malachit	Malachite	The natural mineral	HAB	Malachit (12.09.1992)	

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph (date)	Other
Marble	(Marmor)	Marbre	The natural grained, white rock (mainly consisting of calcite)		Marmor/Stibium (03.07.1992)	
Mercurius vivus naturalis	(Quecksilber, gediegen)	Mercurius vivus	Naturally occurring mercury with traces of other elements	Ph.fr.	Mercurius vivus (02.09.1987)	
(Meteoreisen)			See Ferrum sidereum			
Nontronite	Nontronit	Nontronite	The natural mineral; syn.: Ferrum silicicum naturale	HAB	Ferrum ustum comp. (04.06.1986)	
Olivenite	Olivenit	Olivénite	The natural mineral	HAB	Olivenit (02.09.1987)	
Olivine			See Chrysolite			
Onyx	Onyx	Onyx	The natural mineral	HAB	Onyx (05.12.1989)	
Opal	(Opal)		The natural mineral (silicic acid, containing water)			Der Merkurstab 2009; 62(6): 605-619
Orthoclase	(Orthoklas)		The natural mineral (potassium-aluminium silicate; chem.: $KAlSi_3O_8$)		Orthoklas (07.04.1988)	
Pallasite	(Pallasit)		Stone-Iron-Meteorite (olivine crystals in an iron-nickel matrix)			
Pharmacolite	Pharmakolith	Pharmacolithe	The natural mineral	HAB	Pharmakolith (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 25.10.1994)	
Phosphorocalcite	(Phosphorochalcit, Pseudomalachit)	Phosphorochalcite	The natural mineral (alkaline copper phosphate; chem.: $Cu_5[(OH)_4/(PO_4)_2]$)			
Platinum	(Platin)	Platina	The natural mineral (naturally occurring platinum with traces of other elements)			
Pyrargyrite	(Pyrargyrit)	Pyrargyrite	The natural mineral (silver-antimony sulfide; chem.: Ag_3SbS_3)			
Pyrite	Pyrit	Pyrite	The natural mineral	HAB	Pyrit (04.06.1986)	
Pyrolusite	Pyrolusit	Pyrolusite	The natural mineral (manganese di-oxyde; chem.: MnO_2)			
Pyromorphite	Pyromorphit	Pyromorphite	The natural mineral	HAB	Pyromorphit (21.07.1994)	
Quartz	Quarz	Quartz	The natural mineral	HAB	Quarz (04.06.1986)	

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph (date)	Other
Realgar	(Realgar)	Réalgar	The natural mineral (arsenic sulfide; chem.: As_4S_4)		Realgar (05.12.1989)	
Rose quartz	(Rosenquarz)		The natural mineral (silicic acid; chem.: SiO_2); syn.: Quarz rosae			
Rubellite	(Rubellit)		Pink to red tourmaline (complex silicate with aluminium, boron, fluorine, lithium, iron, sodium and other elements)			Vademecum: Rubellit
Ruby	(Rubin)		The natural red corundum (aluminium oxide; chem.: Al_2O_3 with traces of Chromium)			
Sal Maris			See Sea salt			
Sapphire	(Saphir)		The natural blue (aluminium oxide; chem.: Al_2O_3 with traces of iron and/ or titanium)			
Scorodite	Skorodit	Scorodite	The natural mineral	HAB	Skorodit (04.06.1986)	
Sea salt	(Meersalz)	Natrum muriaticum	Sea salt (chem.: complex mixture with chlorides and sulfates of mainly sodium, magnesium, calcium and potassium beside minor components); syn.: Sal Maris	Ph.fr.		
Seawater	Aqua maris	Aqua maris	Oceanic water (chem.: dissolved mixture of chlorides and sulfates of mainly sodium, magnesium, calcium and potassium beside minor components)		Aqua maris/Prunus spinosa, Summitates (05.12.1989)	Der Merkurstab 2009; 62(6): 605-619
Selenite	(Glacies marias, Gips, Marienglas)		The natural mineral: Transparent, colourless, variety of Gypsum (calcium sulfate; chem.: $CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$); syn.: Glacies Mariae			
Siderite	Siderit	Sidérite	The natural mineral	HAB	Siderit (21.07.1994)	
Silex		Silex	See Flint			
		Silicea naturale	See Quartz			
Smaragd			See Emerald			

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph (date)	Other
Stibnite	Antimonit (Grauspießglanz)	Stibine	The natural mineral	HAB	Antimonit (02.09.1987)	
Succinum			See Amber			
Sulfur	Sulfur	Sulfur	The natural mineral		Sulfur (17.02.1986)	
Sulfur selenosum	(Sulfur selenosum)	Sulfur selenosum	The natural mineral containing a colloidal solution of selenium			Vademecum: Sulfur selenosum
Sylvite	(Sylvin)		The natural mineral (potassium chloride; chem.: KCl)			
(Terra medicinalis)	(Heilerde)		Dried, finely-divided, naturally occurring clay and silt with a varied composition of aluminium oxide, silica, iron oxide and limestone; Terra medicinalis		Placenta/Tropaeolum (02.03.1991)	
(Terra rubra)	(Terra rubra)		The natural red to brownish rock from period Rotliegend (consisting of different fine-grained aluminium silicates and iron oxide)			
Thenardite	(Thenardit)	Thénardite	The natural mineral (sodium sulfate; chem.: Na_2SO_4)			
Topaz	(Topas)		The natural mineral (aluminium-fluorin silicate; chem.: silicate of aluminium and fluorine, $Al_2[(F,OH)_2/SiO_4.)]$			
Trona	(Trona)		The natural mineral (sodium carbonate-hydrogen carbonate; chem.: $Na_3(CO_3)(HCO_3)\cdot 2H_2O$		Solutio Ferri comp. (25.10.1994)	
Tourmaline	(Turmalin)		The natural mineral Tourmaline (complex silicate with aluminium, boron, fluorine and other elements). Rubellite or other varieties. See Rubellite			
Vanadinite	(Vanadinit)		The natural mineral (lead vanadate; chem.: $Pb_5[Cl/(VO_4)_3]$			
Vivianite	Vivianit	Vivianite	The natural mineral	HAB	Vivianit (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	

English name: Ph.Eur. or scientific	German name: HAB (and/or German)	French name or others	Abbreviated definition Further synonyms	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
					KC Monograph (date)	Other
Witherite	Witherit	Withérite	The natural mineral	HAB		Formulaire de med.anthr. (2012): Nontronit D20, Scorodit D12, Witherit D6
Zinnober			See Cinnabar			
Zircon	(Hyazinth)		The natural mineral (zirconium oxide; chem.: $Zr[SiO_4]$)			

APPENDIX 2.2

List of starting materials of botanical origin

Additional Information, see p. 21

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Abies alba Mill.	Fresh tops of Abies alba Mill.		Petasites comp. (12.09.1992)	
Abies pectinata (Lam.) DC.	Young, fresh, leafy branches of Abies alba Mill. (Abies pectinata (Lam.) DC)	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Abrotanum	See Artemisia abrotanum L.			
Absinthium	See Artemisia absinthium L.			
Acetum Vini	See Vitis vinifera L.			
Acetum Vini destillatum	See Vitis vinifera L.			
Achillea millefolium L.	Fresh, whole flowering plant of Achillea millefolium L.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Achillea millefolium L.	Fresh, leaves of Achillea millefolium L., collected in Spring		Millefolium / Hypericum (07.04.1988)	
Achillea millefolium L.	Fresh aerial parts of Achillea millefolium L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Cantharis comp. (04.06.1986)	
Achillea millefolium L.	Whole or cut, dried flowering tops of Achillea millefolium L. (yarrow).	Ph.Eur.		
Achillea millefolium L.	Dried flowers of Achillea millefolium L.	Ph.Helv.	Capsella/Majorana comp. (04.06.1986)	
Aconitum napellus L.	Fresh, whole plants of Aconitum napellus L. collected at the end of flowering time	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Aconitum napellus L.	Fresh whole plants of Aconitum napellus L., collected at the start of flowering	HAB	Aconitum napellus (04.06.1986)	
Aconitum napellus L.	Dried tubers of Aconitum napellus L.	Ph.Helv. VI	Aconitum napellus (04.06.1986)	
Aconitum napellus L.	Fresh underground parts of Aconitum napellus L.		Aconitum napellus (02.03.1986)	
Acorus calamus L.	Volatile oil from the underground parts of Acorus calamus L.			
Acorus calamus L.	Peeled, dried rhizome of Acorus calamus L., with roots and leaf residues removed.	HAB	Calamus, Rhizoma (02.03.1991)	
Acorus calamus L.	Fresh underground parts of Acorus calamus L.		Berberis/Juniperus comp. (03.07.1992)	
Actaea racemosa	see Cimicifuga racemosa (L.) Nutt.			

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Actaea spicata L.	Fresh, underground parts of Actaea spicata L. collected after shots have emerged, but before flowering	HAB		
Adonis vernalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Adonis vernalis L. collected at flowering time	HAB	Adonis/Scilla comp. (25.10.1994)	
Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Fresh bark from younger branches of Aesculus hippocastanum L.		Calendula/Tropaeolum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Fresh buds of Aesculus hippocastanum L.		Sal Maris comp. (04.06.1986)	
Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Freshly peeled seeds of Aesculus hippocastanum L.	HAB	Aesculus, Semen (02.03.1991)	
Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Fresh unpeeled seeds of Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Dried bark from branches of Aesculus hippocastanum L.	HAB	Aesculus, Cortex (04.06.1986)	
Aesculus hippocastanum L.	Dried seeds of Aesculus hippocastanum L.	DAB / USP	Aesculus, Semen (02.03.1991)	
Aethusa cynapium L.	Fresh whole plant of Aethusa cynapium L. at the end of flowering	Ph.fr.		
Agaricus bulbosus	see Amanita phalloides (Fr.) Link.			
Agaricus muscarius	see Amanita muscaria (L.) Pers.			
Agnus castus	see Vitex agnus-castus L.			
Agropyron repens (L.) P. Beauv.	Whole or cut, washed and dried rhizome of Agropyron repens (L.) P. Beauv. (Elymus repens [L.] Gould); the adventitious roots are removed (couch grass rhizome)	Ph.Eur.	Flores Sambuci comp./ Quarz (07.04.1988)	
Agropyron repens	see Elymus repens (L.) Gould			
Ailanthus altissima (Mill.) Swingle	Fresh flowering shoots and fresh bark from the trunk and branches of Ailanthus altissima (Mill.) Swingle			
Ailanthus glandulosa	see Ailanthus altissima			
Ajuga reptans L.	Fresh whole plants of Ajuga reptans L. at flowering time	Ph.fr.		
Alcea rosea L.	Dried, fully developed flowers with calices of Alcea rosea L.		Malva comp. (03.07.1992)	
Alchemilla xanthochlora Rothm.	Fresh aerial parts of Alchemilla xanthochlora Rothm. at flowering			
Alfalfa	see Medicago sativa L.			

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Allium cepa L.	Fresh bulbs of Allium cepa L.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Allium cepa/Mercurialis comp. (02.03.1991)	
Allium sativum L.	Fresh bulbs of Allium sativum L. (garlic for homoeopathic preparations)	HAB / Ph.Eur. / USP	Archangelica comp. (04.06.1986)	
Allium ursinum L.	Fresh whole plants of Allium ursinum L. at the start of flowering	HAB		
Aloe ferox Mill. and other Aloe species	Concentrated and dried juice of the leaves of various species of Aloe, mainly Aloe ferox Miller and its hybrids (aloes, Cape)	Ph.fr., HAB / Ph.Eur.		
Althaea officinalis L.	Peeled or unpeeled, whole or cut, dried root of Althaea officinalis L. (marshmallow root)	Ph.Eur.	Sirupus Thymi comp. (04.06.1986)	
Amanita muscaria (L.) Pers.	Fresh fruiting bodies of Amanita muscaria (L.) Pers.		Agaricus muscarius (12.09.1992)	
Amanita phalloides (Fr.) Link.	Fresh fruiting bodies of Amanita phalloides (Fr. Link)	HAB		
Amaryllis bella-donna L.	Fresh, whole plant of Amaryllis bella-donna L. at flowering			
Ammi visnaga (L.) Lam.	Dried ripe fruits of Ammi visnaga (L.) Lam.	HAB	Ammi visnaga comp. (02.03.1991)	
Amygdalae amarae	see Prunus dulcis var. amara (DC.) Buchheim			
Anacardium	see Semecarpus anacardium L.			
Anagallis arvensis L.	Fresh whole plant of Anagallis arvensis L. at flowering	Ph.fr.	Anagallis comp. (02.03.1991)	
Anagallis arvensis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Anagallis arvensis L., collected at flowering		Anagallis / Malachit comp. (25.10.1994)	
Anagallis arvensis L.	Dried aerial parts of Anagallis arvensis L., having been collected at flowering		Anagallis / Malachit comp. (25.10.1994)	
Anamirta cocculus Wight et Arn.	Ripe, dried fruits of Anamirta cocculus Wight et Arn.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Cocculus/Oleum Petrae comp. (04.06.1986)	
Ananas comosus (L.) Merr.	Freshly pressed juice of fruit of Ananas comosus (L.) Merr.		Resina Laricis comp. (04.06.1986)	
Ananas comosus (L.) Merr.	Fresh fruit of Ananas comosus (L.) Merr.		Ananassa comp. (02.03.1991)	
Angelica archangelica L.	Fermented juice from roots of Angelica archangelica L. obtained by fresh pressing		Archangelica (05.12.1989)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Angelica archangelica L.	Fresh roots of Angelica archangelica L.	HAB	Archangelica/Pyrit comp. (02.03.1991)	
Angelica archangelica L.	Whole or cut, carefully dried rhizome and root of Angelica archangelica L. (syn. A. officinalis Hoffm.) (angelica archangelica root)	Ph.Eur.	Spiritus Melissae comp. (04.06.1986)	
Anhalonium	see Lophophora williamsii Coult.			
Anisum	see Pimpinella anisum L.			
Anthyllis vulneraria L.	Fresh aerial parts of Anthyllis vulneraria L. at flowering		Calendula/Tropaeolum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Apocynum cannabinum L.	Fresh underground parts of Apocynum cannabinum L.	HAB	Scilla comp. (25.10.1994)	
Aralia racemosa L.	Fresh underground parts of Aralia racemosa L.	HAB		
Arctium lappa L.	Dried whole or cut roots of Arctium lappa L. (A. major Gaertn.), A. minus (Hill) Bernh. and A. tomentosum Mill. also related species or hybrids (Asteraceae), collected in autumn of the first year or spring of the second year	DAC	Arnica/Lappa comp. (02.03.1991)	
Arisaema triphyllum (L.) Torr.	Fresh underground parts of Arisaemia triphyllum (L.) Torr., collected before the leaves develop. (Arum triphyllum)	HAB		
Armoracia rusticana Ph. Gärtn., B. Mey. et Scherb.	Fresh leaves of Armoracia rusticana Ph. Gaertn., B. Mey. et Scherb.			
Armoracia rusticana Ph. Gärtn., B. Mey. et Scherb.	Fresh underground parts of Armoracia rusticana Ph. Gaertn., B. Mey et Scherb.	Ph.fr.	Cochelaria armoracia (12.09.1992)	
Arnica montana L.	Volatile oil from the underground parts of Arnica montana L.			Vademecum: Calcium silicicum comp.
Arnica montana L.	Fresh flower-heads of Arnica montana L.		Arnica, Flos (04.06.1986)	
Arnica montana L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Arnica montana L.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Arnica, Planta tota (04.06.1986)	
Arnica montana L.	Fresh underground parts of Arnica montana L.		Arnica (04.06.1986)	
Arnica montana L.	Whole or partially broken, dried flower-heads of Arnica montana L. (arnica flower)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Arnica, Flos (04.06.1986)	
Arnica montana L.	Dried underground parts of Arnica montana L.	HAB	Arnica (04.06.1986)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Artemisia abrotanum L.	Fresh young shoots and leaves of Artemisia abrotanum L.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Abrotanum (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	
Artemisia absinthium L.	Fresh upper shoots with attached leaves and flowers and basal leaves of Artemisia absinthium L. separately or as a mixture.	HAB	Cichorium/Taraxacum comp.(04.06.1986)	
Artemisia absinthium L.	Basal leaves or slightly leafy, flowering tops, or mixture of these dried, whole or cut organs of Artemisia absinthium L. (wormwood)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Gentiana comp. (12.09.1992)	
Arum maculatum L.	Fresh underground parts of Arum maculatum L., collected before the leaves develop.	HAB	Arum maculatum/ Pteridium aquilinum (02.03.1991)	
Arum triphyllum	see Arisaema triphyllum (L.) Torr.			
Arundo donax L.	Fresh underground parts of Arundo donax L.	Ph.fr.		
Asa foetida	see Ferula assa-foetida L.			
Asarum europaeum L.	Fresh underground parts of phenylpropane-containing subspecies of Asarum europaeum L.	HAB		
Asperula odorata	see Galium odoratum			
Aspidium filix-mas	see Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.			
Aspidosperma quebracho-blanco Schlechtend.	Dried whole or cut crust of Aspidosperma quebracho-blanco Schlechtend.	DAC		
Astragalus exscapus L.	Fresh flowering and in fruit rosettes of Astragalus exscapus L.			Vademecum: Astragalus exscapus
Atropa bella-donna L.	Whole or cut, dried roots and rhizome from 3- to 4- year old plants of Atropa bella-donna L., collected at flowering and with fruit	DAC	Belladonna (04.06.1986)	
Atropa bella-donna L.	Fresh fruits of Atropa bella-donna L.		Belladonna (04.06.1986)	
Atropa bella-donna L.	Whole fresh plants of Atropa bella-donna L., without woody lower stem sections, collected at the end of flowering	HAB	Belladonna (04.06.1986)	
Atropa bella-donna L.	Fresh whole flowering plants of Atropa bella-donna L.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Atropa bella-donna L.	Fresh aerial parts of Atropa bella-donna L. without woody lower stem sections, collected at the beginning of flowering		Belladonna (04.06.1986)	
Atropa bella-donna L.	Fresh underground parts of Atropa bella-donna L.		Belladonna (04.06.1986)	
Avena sativa L.	Whole fresh plants of Avena sativa L., collected when the grain has ripened to the milky stage	HAB	Avena/Passiflora comp. (03.07.1992)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Avena sativa L.	Fresh aerial parts of Avena sativa L., collected when the grain has ripened to the milky stage		Hypericum/Passiflora comp. (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	
Avena sativa L.	Fresh aerial parts of Avena sativa L., collected at flowering time	HAB / Ph.fr.	Avena sativa (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	
Avena sativa L.	Germinated fruits of Avena sativa L.		Magnesium phosphoricum cum cinere Avenae (02.03.1991)	
Avena sativa L.	Dried milled fruits of Avena sativa L.			
Ballota nigra L.	Fresh whole plant of Ballota nigra L. at flowering	Ph.fr.		
Balsamum peruvianum	see Myroxylon balsamum (L.) Harms			
Bambusa	see Phyllostachys viridiglaucescens (Carr.) A. et C. Riv.			
Bambusa arundinacea (Retz.) Willd, Bambusa vulgaris Schrad. ex J. C. Wendl.	Fresh shoot joints of Bambusa arundinacea (Retz.) Willd and/or Bambusa vulgaris Schrad. ex J. C. Wendl			
Belladonna	see Atropa bella-donna L.			
Bellis perennis L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Bellis perennis L.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Symphytum comp. (12.09.1992)	
Bellis perennis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Bellis perennis L. at flowering		Bellis/Tropaeolum (02.03.1991)	
Benzoe	see Styrax tonkinensis (Pierre) Craib ex Hartwich			
Berberis aquifolium	see Mahonia aquifolium (Pursh) Nutt.			
Berberis vulgaris L.	Fresh aerial parts of Berberis vulgaris L. at flowering		Berberis/Prostata comp. (12.09.1992)	
Berberis vulgaris L.	Fresh underground parts of Berberis vulgaris L.		Berberis/Urtica urens, Herba (03.07.1992)	
Berberis vulgaris L.	Whole, fully ripened berries of Berberis vulgaris L. stripped off the fruit stalks	HAB	Berberis, Fructus (07.04.1988)	
Berberis vulgaris L.	Fresh whole plant including berries of Berberis vulgaris L.		Berberis, Planta tota / Urtica urens (02.03.1991)	
Berberis vulgaris L.	Dried bark of aerial and underground parts of Berberis vulgaris L.	HAB	Berberis, Cortex (03.07.1992)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Berberis vulgaris L.	Dried bark of underground parts of Berberis vulgaris L.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Berberis vulgaris L.	Dried underground parts of Berberis vulgaris L.		Berberis/Chelidonium comp. (02.03.1991)	
Beta vulgaris L.	Saccharum Betae (crude beet sugar)			
Betonica	see Stachys officinalis (L.) Trev.			
Betula pendula Roth	Fresh young leaves of Betula pendula Roth.	HAB	Betula, Folium (04.06.1986)	
Betula pendula Roth	Dried white parts only of bark from trunk and branches of Betula pendula Roth	HAB	Betula, Cortex (07.04.1988)	
Betula pendula Roth, Betula pubescens Ehrhart	Whole or fragmented dried leaves of Betula pendula Roth and /or Betula pubescens Ehrh., as well as hybrids of both species. (Birch leaf)	Ph.Eur.	Betula, Folium (04.06.1986)	
Betula pendula Roth, Betula pubescens Ehrhart	Final carbon remaining from burning Birch wood	HAB	Carbo Betulae (04.06.1986)	
Boldo	see Peumus boldus Mol.			
Borago officinalis L.	Fresh leaves of Borago officinalis L.		Borago (02.03.1991)	
Borago officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Borago officinalis L. at flowering		Borago (02.03.1991)	
Boswellia species, particularly Boswellia carteri Birdwood	see Boswellia species, particularly Boswellia sacra Flueckiger			
Boswellia species, particularly Boswellia sacra Flueckiger	Solidified gum-resin obtained from incisions in the shrubs or trees of members of the genus Boswellia, particularly Boswellia carteri Birdwood (Syn. Boswellia sacra Flueckiger) and/or Bosswellia frereana Birdwood	(DAC, Ph.Eur., B. serrata)	Aurum comp. (05.12.1989)	
Botrychium lunaria L.	Fresh aerial parts of Botrychium lunaria L.			
Brassica nigra (L.) W.D.J. Koch	Ripe dried seeds of Brassica nigra (L.) Koch (Sinapis nigra)	DAC	Aesculus/Cera comp. (02.03.1991)	
Bryonia cretica L. ssp. dioica (Jacq.) Tutin	Fresh root of Bryonia cretica L. ssp. dioica (Jacq.) Tutin or Bryonia alba L., harvested before the plant comes into flower	HAB	Bryonia (03.07.1992)	
Bryonia cretica L. ssp. dioica (Jacq.) Tutin	Fresh root of Bryonia cretica L. ssp. dioica (Jacq.) Tutin, harvested before shoots are produced	HAB	Bryonia (03.07.1992)	
Bryonia cretica L. ssp. dioica (Jacq.) Tutin	Fresh underground parts of Bryonia cretica L. ssp. dioica (Jacq.) Tutin or Bryonia alba L.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Bryophyllum daigremontianum (Raym.-Hamet et H. Perrier) A. Berger and Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken	Fresh leaves of Bryophyllum daigremontianum (Raym.-Hamet et H. Perrier) A. Berger and Kalanchoe pinnata (Lam.) Pers., harvested in the first year of growth	HAB	Bryophyllum (04.06.1986)	
Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken	Fresh pressed juice from leaves of Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken		Bryophyllum (04.06.1986)	
Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken	Fresh leaves of Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken, harvested in the first year of growth	HAB	Bryophyllum (04.06.1986)	
Buxus sempervirens L.	Fresh, young leafy branches of Buxus sempervirens L.	Ph.fr.		
Cactus grandiflorus	See Selenicereus grandiflorus (L.) Britt. et Rose			
Cajeputi aetheroleum	See Melaleuca leucadendra (L.) L.			
Calamus	See Acorus calamus L.			
Calendula officinalis L.	Fresh flower heads of Calendula officinalis L.		Calendula (04.06.1986)	
Calendula officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Calendula officinalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Calendula (04.06.1986)	
Calendula officinalis L.	Dried flower heads of Calendula officinalis L.		Euphrasia comp. (02.09.1987)	
Calendula officinalis L.	Whole or cut, dried, and fully opened flowers that have been detached from the receptacle of the cultivated, double-flowered varieties of Calendula officinalis L. (Calendula flowers)	Ph.Eur.		
Calendula officinalis L.	Dried aerial parts of Calendula officinalis L., collected at flowering time		Arnica comp./Cuprum (04.06.1986)	
Capsella bursa-pastoris (L.) Med.	Dried aerial parts of Capsella bursa-pastoris (L.) Medik, collected at flowering time	HAB	Capsella bursa-pastoris (12.09.1992)	
Capsicum annuum L.	Dried ripe fruits of Capsicum annuum L.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Kastanien-Haartonikum (04.06.1986)	
Caramel	see Saccharum officinarum L.			
Carduus benedictus	see Cnicus benedictus L.			
Carduus marianus	see Silybum marianum (L.) Gaertn.			
Carex arenaria L.	Dried rhizome of Carex arenaria L., collected in spring			Soldner / Stellmann (2011), Individuelle Pädiatrie, p. 190-198

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Carum carvi L.	Oil obtained by steam distillation from the dry fruits of Carum carvi L. (caraway oil)	Ph.Eur.	Oleum lactagogum (02.09.1987)	
Carum carvi L.	Whole, dry mericarp of Carum carvi L. (caraway fruit)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Carum carvi comp. (02.03.1991)	
Caryophyllus	see Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merr. et L. M. Perry			
Cassia angustifolia Vahl., Cassia senna L.	Dried leaflets of Cassia senna L. (C. acutifolia Delil) , known as Alexandrian or Khartoum senna, or Cassia angustifolia Vahl, known as Tinnevelly senna, or a mixture of the 2 species	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Cassia angustifolia Vahl., Cassia senna L.	Dried leaflets of Cassia senna L. (C. acutifolia Delile), known as Alexandrian or Khartoum senna, or Cassia angustifolia Vahl., known as Tinnevelly senna, or a mixture of the two species. (senna leaf)	Ph.Eur.	Centaurium comp. (04.06.1986)	
Cassia senna L. (C. acutifolia Delile)	Dried fruit of Cassia senna L. (senna pods, alexandrian)	Ph.Eur.	Artemisia comp. (02.03.1991)	
Caulophyllum thalictroides (L.) Michx.	Fresh underground parts of Caulophyllum thalictroides (L.) Michx., harvested in late summer	HAB		
Caulophyllum thalictroides (L.) Michx.	Dried underground parts of Caulophyllum thalictroides (L.) Michaux.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Ceanothus americanus L.	Dried leaves of Ceanothus americanus L.	Ph.fr. / HAB		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Centaurium erythraea Rafn.	Fresh whole plants of Centaurium erythraea Rafn., collected at flowering time			
Centaurium erythraea Rafn.	Fresh aerial parts of Centaurium erythraea Rafn.		Cichorium/Taraxacum comp. (04.06.1986)	
Centaurium erythraea Rafn.	Whole or fragmented dried flowering aerial parts of Centaurium erythraea Rafn s. l. including C. majus (H. et L.) Zeltner and C. suffruticosum (Griseb.) Ronn. (syn.: Erythraea centaurium Persoon; C. umbellatum Gilibert; C. minus Gars.) (centaury)	Ph.Eur.	Centaurium comp. (04.06.1986)	
Centella asiatica (L.) Urb.	Dried, fragmented aerial parts of Centella asiatica (L.) Urban	Ph.fr.		
Cepa	see Allium cepa L.			
Cephaelis ipecacuanha	see Psychotria ipecacuanha (Brot.) Stokes			

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Cephaelis ipecacuanha (Brot.) A. Rich., Cephaelis acuminata Karsten	Fragmented and dried underground organs of Cephaelis ipecacuanha (Brot.) A. Rich., known as Matto Grosso ipecacuanha, or of Cephaelis acuminata Karsten, known as Costa Rica ipecacuanha, or of a mixture of both species. (ipecacuanhae root)	Ph.fr. / Ph.Eur.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Cetraria islandica (L.) Ach.	Whole or cut, dried thallus of Cetraria islandica (L.) Acharius s.l. (iceland moss)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Cetraria islandica (04.06.1986)	
Chamaelirium luteum (L.) A. Gray	Dried underground parts of Chamaelirium luteum (L.) A. Gray			
Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert	see Matricaria recutita L.			
Cheiranthus cheiri L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of Cheiranthus cheiri L.			
Chelidonium majus L.	Fresh rhizome and adherent roots of Chelidonium majus L., collected during late autumn or on the appearance of the first shoots	HAB	Chelidonium (12.09.1992)	
Chelidonium majus L.	Fresh flowers of Chelidonium majus L.	HAB	Chelidonium (12.09.1992)	
Chelidonium majus L.	Fresh aerial parts of Chelidonium majus L., collected at flowering time		Chelidonium (12.09.1992)	
Chelidonium majus L.	Fresh whole flowering plants of Chelidonium majus L.	Ph.fr.		
Chimaphila umbellata (L.) Barton	Dried aerial parts of Chimaphila umbellata (L.) Barton	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
China	see Cinchona pubescens Vahl			
Chlorophyceae	Fresh Thalli of algae from the genus Cladophora or Oedogonium or other genera of filamentous organised green algae from the class Chlorophyceae.		Argentum nitricum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Chondodendron tomentosum Ruiz et Pav.	Dried roots of Chondodendron tomentosum Ruiz et Pav.	Ph.fr.		
Chrysosplenium alternifolium L.	Whole fresh plants of Chrysosplenium alternifolium L.		Chrysosplenium comp. (25.10.1994)	
Cichorium intybus L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Cichorium intybus L.	HAB	Cichorium (03.07.1992)	
Cichorium intybus L.	Dried whole plants of Cichorium intybus L. var. intybus and Cichorium intybus L. var. sativum DC, collected at flowering time. The tough middle stem sections are not used.	HAB	Cichorium (03.07.1992)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Cichorium intybus L.	Dried root of Cichorium intybus L. ssp. intybus and Cichorium intybus L. ssp. sativum (DC) Janchen, collected at flowering time		Cichorium (03.07.1992)	
Cimicifuga racemosa (L.) Nutt.	Fresh rhizome and adherent roots of Cimifuga racemosa (L.) Nutt.	HAB	Cimicifuga comp. (02.09.1987)	
Cinchona pubescens Vahl	Whole or cut, dried bark of Cinchona pubescens Vahl (Cinchona succirubra Pav.), of C. calisaya Wedd., of C. ledgeriana Moens ex Trimen or of their varieties or hybrids (cinchona bark)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Aconitum/China comp. (12.09.1992)	
Cineraria maritima	see Senecio bicolor (Willd.) Tod.			
Cinnamomum verum J. S. Presl	Dried bark, freed from the outer cork and the underlying parenchyma, of the shoots grown on cut stock of Cinnamomumverum J. S. Presl (cinnamon)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Spiritus Melissae comp. (04.06.1986)	
Cissus gongylodes (Bak.) Burch.	Fresh aerial roots of Cissus gongylodes (Bak.) Burch.		Cissus-Ossa (03.07.1992)	
Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad.	Dried pulp of Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad.	Fresh peeled unripe fruit of Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad. without seeds		Colocynthis (07.04.1988)	
Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad.	Dried peeled fruit of Citullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad. without seeds	HAB	Colocynthis (07.04.1988)	
Citrus limon (L.) Burm. f.	Essential oil obtained by suitable mechanical means, without the aid of heat, from the fresh peel of Citrus limon (L.) Burman. fil. (lemon oil)	Ph.Eur.	Spiritus Melissae comp. (04.06.1986)	
Citrus limon (L.) Burm. f.	Fresh pressed juice from the fruit of Citrus limon (L.) Burman. fil.		Citrus/Cydonia (04.06.1986)	
Citrus limon (L.) Burm. f.	Fresh fruit of Citrus limon (L.) Burman. fil.		Citrus/Cydonia (04.06.1986)	
Citrus medica var. limonum	see Citrus limon (L.) Burman. fil.			
Cladina rangiferina (L.) Nyl.	Dried thallus of Cladina rangiferina (L.) Nyl.		Lichenes comp. (04.06.1986)	
Claviceps purpurea (Fr.) Tul.	Dried sclerotum of Claviceps purpurea (Fries) Tulasne, grown on rye plants (Secale cereale L.) and dried at a temperature not exceeding 40°C (Secale cornutum)	HAB	Bleiglanz/Secale comp. (12.09.1992)	
Clematis recta L.	Fresh, young leafy branches of Clematis recta L., collected at flowering time	Ph.fr.		

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Clematis recta L.	Fresh aerial parts of of Clematis recta L., collected at flowering time	HAB		Vademecum: Clematis recta
Cnicus benedictus L.	Fresh aerial parts of Cnicus benedictus L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Borago comp. (12.09.1992)	
Cocculus	see Anamirta cocculus Wight et Arn.			
Cochlearia armoracia	see Armoracia rusticana Ph. Gärtn., B. Mey. et Scherb.			
Cochlearia officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Cochlearia officinalis L., collected at the start of flowering time	HAB	Cochlearia officinalis (07.04.1988)	
Cochlearia officinalis L.	Dried aerial parts of Cochlearia officinalis L., collected at the beginning of the flowering time		Levisticum comp. (02.09.1987)	
Coffea arabica L.	Dried roasted seeds of Coffea arabica L.		Avena sativa comp. (04.06.1986)	
Coffea arabica L., Coffea canephora Pierre ex Froehner and their varieties.	Dried grey-green seeds of Coffea arabica L., de Coffea canephora Pierre ex Froehner and their varieties.	Ph.fr.		
Coffea arabica L.	Ripe, dried, unroasted seeds of Coffea arabica L. with the seed coat (silver skin) largely removed	HAB		
Colchicum autumnale L.	Fresh corms of Colchicum autumnale L.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Colchicum autumnale L.	Fresh corms of Colchicum autumnale L., collected at flowering time and free from fibrous roots	HAB	Colchicum (04.06.1986)	
Colchicum autumnale L.	Fresh whole, flowering plant of Colchicum autumnale L.		Colchicum (04.06.1986)	
Collinsonia canadensis L.	Dried rhizome of Collinsonia canadensis L.	Ph.fr.		
Colocynthis	see Citrullus colocynthis (L.) Schrad.			
Commiphora Jacq. Species	Gum-resin, hardened in air, obtained by incision or produced by spontaneous exudation from the stem and branches of Commiphora molmol Engler and/or other species of Commiphora (myrrh)	Ph.Eur.	Aurum comp. (05.12.1989)	
Conium maculatum L.	Fresh flowerheads of Conium maculatum L., collected at the end of flowering time	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Conium maculatum L.	Fresh, aerial parts of the flowering, but not yet fruiting specimens of Conium maculatum L.	HAB	Conium maculatum (02.09.1987)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Convallaria majalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Convallaria majalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Convallaria (03.07.1992)	
Convallaria majalis L.	Fresh whole, flowering plants of Convallaria majalis L.		Convallaria/Primula comp. (12.09.1992)	
Convallaria majalis L.	Fresh flowers of Convallaria majalis L.		Convallaria (03.07.1992)	
Coriandrum sativum L.	Dried cremocarp of Coriandrium sativum L. (coriander)	Ph.Eur.	Spiritus Melissae comp. (04.06.1986)	
Corydalis cava (L.) Clairv.	Fresh undergroung parts of Corydalis cava (L.) Clairv.			
Crataegus laevigata (Poir.) DC., Crataegus monogyna Jacq. emend. Lindm.	Fresh leaves and ripe fruit of Crataegus laevigata (Poir.) DC. and Crataegus monogyna Jacq. emend. Lindman		Crataegus (02.09.1987)	
Crataegus laevigata (Poir.) DC., Crataegus monogyna Jacq. emend. Lindm.	Fresh ripe fruits of Crataegus laevigata (Poir) DC., Crataegus monogyna Jacq. emend. Lindm., their hybrids and mixtures thereof	HAB	Crataegus (02.09.1987)	
Crataegus laevigata (Poir.) DC., Crataegus monogyna Jacq. emend. Lindm.	Whole or cut, dried flower-bearing branches of Crataegus monogyna Jacq. (Lindm.), C. laevigata (Poir.) DC. (synonyms: C.oxyacanthoides Thuill.; C. oxyacantha auct.) or their hybrids or, more rarely,other European Crataegus species including C. pentagyna Waldst. et Kit. ex Willd., C. nigra Waldst. et Kit. and C. azarolus L. (hawthorn leaf and flower)	Ph.Eur.	Crataegus (02.09.1987)	
Crocus sativus L.	Dried stigmas of Crocus sativa L., usually joined by the base to a short style. (saffron for homoeopathic preparations)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Kalium aceticum comp. (03.07.1992)	
Croton tiglium L.	Dried seeds of Croton tiglium L.	Ph.fr.		
Cucurbita pepo L.	Fresh flowers of Cucurbita pepo L.		Apatit / Phosphorus comp. (04.06.1986)	
Cucurbita pepo L.	Dried pulp of pumpkins of Cucurbita maxima Duch.			Vademecum: Chelidonium/Curcuma comp.
Cupressus sempervirens L	Fresh leafy branches of Cupressus sempervirens L. with cones	Ph.fr.		
Curcuma xanthorrhiza Roxb.	Dried rhizome, cut in slices, of Cucurma xanthorrhiza Roxb. (C. xanthorrhiza D. Dietrich). (turmeric, Javanese)	Ph.Eur.	Chelidonium/Curcuma (04.06.1986)	
Cydonia oblonga Mill.	Fresh ripe fruits of Cydonia oblonga Mill.		Cydonia, Fructus (02.03.1991)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Cymbopogon winterianus Jowitt	Oil obtained by steam distillation from the fresh or partially dried aerial parts of Cymbopogon winterianus Jowitt (citronellae oil)	Ph.Eur.	Citronellae aetheroleum (02.03.1991)	
Cynara scolymus L.	Fresh leaves of Cynara scolymus L.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link.	Fresh young tips of shoots of Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link. with flowers and leaves	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link.	Fresh aerial parts of Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link at flowering time		Sarothamnus comp. (03.07.1992)	
Daphne mezereum L.	Fresh bark from the branches of Daphne mezereum L., collected prior to flowering	HAB	Mezereum (03.07.1992)	
Datura stramonium L.	Fresh aerial parts of Datura stramonium L., collected at flowering time	HAB / Ph.fr.	Stramonium (02.03.1991)	
Delphinium staphisagria L.	Dried ripe seeds of Delphinium staphisagria L.	HAB / Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Digitalis purpurea L.	Fresh leaves from two-year-old specimens of Digitalis purpurea L., collected before flowering time	HAB	Digitalis purpurea (02.09.1987)	
Dolichos pruriens	see Mucuna pruriens (L.) DC.			
Drosera rotundifolia L., Drosera intermedia Hayne, Drosera anglica Huds.	Whole fresh plants of Drosera rotundifolia L., Drosera intermedia Hayne and Drosera anglica Huds., single species or mixed, collected at the start of flowering	HAB	Plantago comp. (12.09.1992)	
Drosera rotundifolia L., Drosera intermedia Hayne, Drosera anglica Huds.	Whole dried plants of different Drosera species, mainly Drosera rotundifolia L., Drosera intermedia Hayne and Drosera anglica Huds. (D. longifolia L.)	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.	Fresh rhizome of Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott, with roots		Aquilinum comp. (12.09.1992)	
Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.	Fresh aerial parts of Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.		Aspidium/Salix comp. (04.06.1986)	
Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.	Ripe spores of Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.		Agaricus comp./Phosphorus (05.12.1989)	
Dulcamara	see Solanum dulcamara L.			
Echinacea angustifolia DC., Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Echinacea angustifolia DC. and Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt., single species or mixed	HAB		
Echinacea angustifolia DC.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Echinacea angustifolia DC.	HAB	Echinacea (07.04.1988)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt.	Fresh flowering plants of Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt.	HAB	Echinacea/Quarz comp. (02.03.1991)	
Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt.	Fresh aerial parts of Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt., collected at flowering time		Echinacea (07.04.1988)	
Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt.	Fresh underground parts of Echinacea pallida (Nutt.) Nutt.		Argentum/Echinacea (05.12.1989)	
Echinacea purpurea (L.) Moench	Whole fresh flowering plants of Echinacea purpurea (L.) Moench	HAB	Echinacea (07.04.1988)	
Elymus repens (L.) Gould	Fresh underground parts of Elymus repens (L.) Gould	HAB	Agropyron comp. (07.04.1988)	
Equisetum arvense L.	Fresh, green, sterile shoots of Equisetum arvense L.	HAB	Equisetum arvense (04.06.1986)	
Equisetum arvense L.	Whole or cut, dried sterile aerial parts of Equisetum arvense L. (equisetum stem)	Ph.Eur.	Equisetum arvense (04.06.1986)	
Equisetum fluviatile L	see Equisetum limosum L.			
Equisetum limosum L.	Fresh aerial parts of Equisetum limosum L.			Soldner/ Stellmann (2011) Individuelle Pädiatrie
Erythraea centaurium	see Centaurium erythraea Rafn.			
Eschscholzia californica Cham.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Eschscholzia californica Cham.	Ph.fr.		
Eucalyptus globulus Labill.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation and rectification from the fresh leaves or the fresh terminal branchlets of various species of Eucalyptus rich in 1,8-cineole. The species mainly used are Eucalyptus globulus Labill., Eucalyptus polybractea R.T.Baker and Eucalyptus smithii R.T.Baker (eucalyptus oil)	Ph.Eur.	Eucalypti aetheroleum (02.09.1987)	
Eucalyptus globulus Labill.	Fresh leaves of Eucalyptus globulus Labill.		Cuprum sulfuricum/ Eucalyptus (25.10.1994)	
Eucalyptus globulus Labill.	Whole or cut dried leaves of older branches of Eucalyptus globulus Labill. (eucalyptus leaf)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Bryonia/Eupatorium comp. (04.06.1986)	
Eugenia caryophyllata	see Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merr. et L. M. Perry			
Eupatorium cannabinum L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of Eupatorium cannabinum L.		Aconitum/China comp. (12.09.1992)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Eupatorium perfoliatum L.	Fresh aerial parts of Eupatorium perfoliatum L., collected at start of flowering	HAB / Ph.fr.	Bryonia/Eupatorium comp. (04.06.1986)	
Euphorbia resinifera O. Berg.	Hardened latex from Euphorbia resinifera O. Berg	HAB		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Euphrasia stricta Wolff ex F.J. Lehm. and Euphrasia officinalis L. subsp. rostkoviana (Hayne) Towns	Whole fresh plants of Euphrasia stricta Wolff ex F.J. Lehm. and Euphrasia officinalis L. subsp. rostkoviana (Hayne) Towns, their hybrids and mixtures thereof, collected at flowering time	HAB	Euphrasia (05.12.1989)	
Euphrasia officinalis L.	Whole fresh plants of Euphrasia officinalis L., collected at flowering time	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Fagus sylvatica L.	Branch and trunk wood of Fagus silvatica L.		Agropyron comp. (07.04.1988)	
Ferula assa-foetida L.	Dried gum resin from Ferula species such as Ferula assa-foetida L. and Ferula foetida (Bunge) Regel. (Asa foetida)	HAB		
Filipendula ulmaria (L.) Maxim.	Fresh aerial parts of Filipendula ulmaria (L.) Maxim. collected at floweing time.	HAB	Betula/Mandragora comp. (25.10.1994)	
Filipendula ulmaria (L.) Maxim.	Fresh inflorecence of Filipendula ulmaria (L.) Maxim. (Spiraea ulmaria L.)	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Filix-mas	see Dryopteris filix-mas (L.) Schott.			
Foeniculum vulgare Mill.	Essential oil obtained by steam destillation from the ripe fruits of Foeniculum vulgare Miller ssp. vulgare var. Vulgare(bitter-fennel fruit oil)	Ph.Eur.	Berberis/Juniperus comp. (03.07.1992)	
Foeniculum vulgare Mill.	Dried cremocarps and mericarps of Foeniculum vulgare Mill. sp. vulgare (fennel, bitter)	HAB/Ph.Eur.	Species Carvi comp. (04.06.1986)	
Fragaria vesca L.	Fresh, ripe false-fruits of Fragaria vesca L		Fragaria/Urtica comp. (03.07.1992)	
Fragaria vesca L.	Dried, whole or cut leaves, collected at flowering time of Fragaria vesca L., Fragaria moschata West., Fragaria viridis West., Fragaria x ananassa (Duch.) Guedes (Rosaceae), their hybrids as well as hybrids with other Fragaria species or mixtures of them	DAC	Fragaria/Vitis (04.06.1986)	
Frangula alnus	see Rhamnus frangula L.			
Fraxinus americana L.	Dried bark from branches of Fraxinus americana L.	Ph.fr.		
Fucus vesiculosus L.	Fresh thallus of Fucus vesiculosus L.	(Ph.fr.)	Tropaeolum comp. (02.03.1991)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Fucus vesiculosus L., Fucus serratus L., Ascophyllum nodosum Le Jolis. (Kelp)	Fragmented dried thallus of Fucus vesiculosus L., or F. serratus L., or Ascophyllum nodosum Le Jolis. (kelp)	Ph.Eur.		
Fumaria officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Fumaria officinalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Tropaeolum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Galanthus nivalis L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of Galanthus nivalis L.			Vademecum (combination see Hippocampus)
Gallae turcicae	Oak apples produced on young shoots of Quercus infectoria Olivier by the sting of the dyer's gall wasp Andricus gallae tinctoriae Olivier	HAB		
Galium odoratum (L.) Scop.	Fresh leaves of Galium odoratum (L.) Scop.			
Gelsemium sempervirens (L.) Jaume St. - Hil.	Fresh underground parts of Gelsemium sempervirens (L.) Jaume St.-Hil.	HAB	Gelsemium (02.09.1987)	
Gelsemium sempervirens (L.) Jaume St. - Hil.	Fresh underground parts of Gelsemium sempervirens (L.) Jaume St.-Hil.	Ph.fr.	Gelsemium (02.09.1987)	
Gelsemium sempervirens (L.)	Dried underground parts of Gelsemium sempervirens (L.)		Gelsemium (02.09.1987)	
Genista scoparia	see Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link.			
Gentiana lutea L.	Fresh underground parts of Gentiana lutea L.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Gentiana lutea (04.06.1986)	
Gentiana lutea L.	Dried, fragmented underground organs of Gentiana lutea L. (gentian root)	Ph.Eur.	Gentiana lutea (04.06.1986)	
Geraniaceae	see Pelargonium species			
Geum urbanum L.	Fresh underground parts of Geum urbanum L.	HAB	Geum urbanum (03.07.1992)	
Ginkgo biloba L.	Fresh leaves of Ginkgo biloba L.	HAB / Ph.fr.		
Ginseng	see Panax ginseng C.A. Mey.			
Glechoma hederacea L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of Glechoma hederacea L.	Ph.fr.		
Glechoma hederacea L.	Dried flowering plant of Glechoma hederacea L.			
Gnaphalium	see Leontopodium alpinum Cass.			
Gramineae	Dried inflorescence of several Gramineae species obtained from hay (hay flowers, hay blossoms)			

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Fresh bark and leaves of Hamamelis virginiana L.		Hamamelis (03.07.1992)	
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Fresh bark of Hamamelis virginiana L.	HAB	Hamamelis (03.07.1992)	
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Fresh leaves of Hamamelis virginiana L.	HAB	Hamamelis (03.07.1992)	
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Fresh flowering branches of Hamamelis virginiana L., collected in late autumn	HAB 34	Hamamelis destillata (25.10.1994)	
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Dried bark from the stems and branches of Hamamelis virginiana L.	HAB	Hamamelis (03.07.1992)	
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Dried leaves and dried bark from the stems and branches of Hamamelis virginiana L.		Lotio Pruni comp. (04.06.1986)	
Hamamelis virginiana L.	Whole or cut, dried leaf of Hamamelis virginiana L. (hamamelis leaf)	Ph.Eur.	Stibium comp (04.06.1986)	
Harpagophytum procumbens (Burch.) DC	Cut and dried, tuberous secondary roots of Harpagophytum procumbens DC. and/or Harpagophytum zeyheri Decne (devil's claw root)	Ph.Eur. / Ph.fr.	Harpagophytum, Radix (03.07.1992)	Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Helianthus tuberosus L.	Fresh tubers of Helianthus tuberosus L., collected in late autumn	HAB		
Helleborus niger L.	Fresh whole flowering plants of Helleborus niger L.		Helleborus niger (04.06.1986)	
Helleborus niger L.	Fresh whole plants of Helleborus niger L.		Helleborus niger (04.06.1986)	
Helleborus niger L.	Whole fresh plant collected in summer and fresh flowering shoots collected in winter of Helleborus niger L.			
Helonias dioica	see Chamaelirium luteum (L.) A. Gray			
Heracleum mantegazzianum Sommier & Levier	Whole fresh plant of Heracleum mantegazzianum Sommier & Levier			
Hibiscus sabdariffa L.	Whole or cut dried calyces and epicalyces of Hibiscus sabdariffa L., collected during fruiting (roselle)	Ph.Eur.		
Hippophaë rhamnoides L.	Fresh branches of Hippophaë rhamnoides L. with fruit			
Hippophaë rhamnoides L.	Fresh fruits of Hippophaë rhamnoides L.			

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Hippophaë rhamnoides L.	Fatty oil obtained from the seeds and/or fruit of Hippophaë rhamnoides L.			
Hordeum vulgare L.	Extract obtained from dried germinated fruits of Hordeum vulgare L. (malt)		Sirupus Thymi comp. (04.06.1986)	
Hoya carnosa (L.f.) R. Br.	Nectar of the flowers of Hoya carnosa (L.f.) R. Br.		Centaurium comp. (04.06.1986)	
Humulus lupulus L.	Fresh creepers with leaves and fruits of Humulus lupulus L.		Avena/Passiflora comp. (03.07.1992)	
Humulus lupulus L.	Fresh female inflorescences of Humulus lupulus L., collected before the seeds have ripened and containing as few seeds as possible	HAB	Avena sativa comp. (04.06.1986)	
Humulus lupulus L.	Dried, generally whole, female inflorescences of Humulus lupulus L. (hop strobile)	Ph.Eur.		
Hydrastis canadensis L.	Dried underground parts of Hydrastis canadensis L. Ph.Eur.: Whole or cut, dried rhizome and root of Hydrastis canadensis L	HAB / USP / Ph.fr.	Echinacea comp. (04.06.1986)	
Hydrocotyle asiatica	see Centella asiatica (L.) Urb.			
Hyoscyamus niger L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of Hyoscyamus niger L.		Hyoscyamus (04.06.1986)	
Hyoscyamus niger L.	Whole, fresh flowering plants of Hyoscyamus niger L (hyoscyamus for homoeopathic preparations)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Hyoscyamus (04.06.1986)	
Hypericum perforatum L.	Fresh flowers of Hypericum perforatum L.		Hypericum (02.09.1987)	
Hypericum perforatum L.	Fresh aerial parts of Hypericum perforatum L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Hypericum (02.09.1987)	
Hypogymnia physodes (L.) Nyl.	Dried thallus of Hypogymnia physodes (L.) Nyl. (Parmelia physodes (L.) Ach.)			
Ignatia	See Strychnos ignatii Bergius			
Imperatoria ostruthium	See Peucedanum ostruthium (L.) W. D. J. Koch			
Ipecacuanha	See Psychotria ipecacuanha (Brot.) Stokes			
Ipecacuanha (Ipecacuanhae radix)	See Cephaelis ipecacuanha (Brot.) A. Rich., Cephaelis acuminata Karsten			
Iris germanica L.	Fresh rhizome of Iris germanica L.			
Iris germanica L.	Dried peeled rhizome of Iris germanica L., Iris germanica var. florentina L. and Iris pallida Lamarck		Lotio Pruni comp. (04.06.1986)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Iris versicolor L.	Fresh underground parts (rhizome including roots) of Iris versicolor L. collected at flowering time	Ph.fr.		
Iris versicolor L.	Fresh underground parts of Iris versicolor L.	HAB		
Juglans regia L.	Dried outer membrane from the seed of Juglans regia L.		Carpellum Mali comp. (25.10.1994)	
Juglans regia L.	Dried leaves of Juglans regia L.	DAC		
Juglans regia L.	Fresh leaves and unripe fruit of Juglans regia L.		Juglans regia comp. (25.10.1994)	
Juniperus communis L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the ripe, non-fermented berry cones of Juniperus communis L. (juniper oil)	Ph.Eur.	Berberis/Juniperus comp. (03.07.1992)	
Juniperus communis L.	Fresh ripe cone berry of Juniperus communis L.	DAB 9	Tropaeolum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Juniperus communis L.	Dried tips of shoots of Juniperus communis L.		Cichorium/Taraxacum comp. (04.06.1986)	
Juniperus communis L.	Dried ripe cone berry of Juniperus communis L. (juniper)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Betula/Juniperus (02.03.1991)	
Juniperus sabina L.	Fresh, still unlignified, growing tips of twigs of Juniperus sabina L., with adherent leaves	HAB	Colchicum/Sabina (04.06.1986)	
Kalanchoe daigremontiana	see Bryophyllum daigremontianum (Raym.-Hamet et H. Perrier) A. Berger			
Kalanchoe pinnata	see Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken			
Kalmia latifolia L.	Fresh leaves of Kalmia latifolia L.	HAB / Ph.fr.		
Krameria triandra Ruiz et Pav.	Dried, usually fragmented, underground organs of Krameria triandra Ruiz and Pavon. (rhatany root)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Ratanhia comp. (03.07.1992)	
Kreosotum	see Fagus silvatica L.			
Lamium album L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of Lamium album L.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Lamium album L.	Dried flowers of Lamium album L.	HAB	Argentum/Quercus comp. (04.06.1986)	
Lappa major	see Arctium lappa L.			
Larix decidua Mill.	Balsam obtained from holes drilled in the trunks of Larix decidua Mill. (Terebinthina laricina)	HAB	Resina Laricis (02.09.1987)	
Laurus nobilis L.	Fresh leaves of Laurus nobilis L.			

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Lavandula angustifolia Mill.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the flowering tops of Lavandula angustifolia Mill. (Lavandula officinalis Chaix) (lavender oil)	Ph.Eur.	Lavendelöl (04.06.1986)	
Lavandula angustifolia Mill.	Fresh flowers of Lavandula angustifolia Mill.	HAB		
Lavandula angustifolia Mill.	Fresh flowering stems of Lavandula angustifolia Mill.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Lavandula angustifolia Mill.	Dried flower of Lavandula angustifolia Mill. (L. officinalis Chaix) (lavender flower)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Aesculus/Lavandula siccata (25.10.1994)	
Ledum palustre L.	Dried tips of twigs of Ledum palustre L.	HAB		
Leontopodium alpinum Cass.	Whole fresh plants of Leontopodium alpinum Cass.		Apis comp. (04.06.1986)	
Leontopodium alpinum Cass.	Whole dried flowering plants of Leontopodium alpinum Cass.		Gnaphalium comp. (25.10.1994)	
Leonurus cardiaca L.	Fresh aerial parts of Leonurus cardiaca L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Cimicifuga comp. (02.09.1987)	
Leptandra virginica (L.) Nutt.	Dried underground parts of Leptandra virginica (L.) Nutt.			
Levisticum officinale W. D. J. Koch	Whole or cut dried rhizome and root of Levisticum officinale Koch. (lovage root)	Ph.Eur.	Levisticum (04.06.1986)	
Levisticum officinale W. D. J. Koch	Whole fresh plant of Levisticum officinale W. D. J. Koch			
Levisticum officinale W. D. J. Koch	Fresh underground parts of Levisticum officinale W. D. J. Koch	HAB	Levisticum (04.06.1986)	
Levisticum officinale W. D. J. Koch	Fresh flowers of Levisticum officinale W. D. J. Koch		Levisticum (04.06.1986)	
Levisticum officinale W. D. J. Koch	Fresh leaves of Levisticum officinale W. D. J. Koch			Der Merkurstab 4/2007: p. 345
Lilium lancifolium Thunb.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Lilium lancifolium Thunb.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Lilium lancifolium Thunb.	Fresh parts of Lilium lancifolium Thunb., withpout bulbs, collected at flowering time	HAB	Argentum/Quercus comp. (04.06.1986)	
Lilium lancifolium Thunb.	Fresh aerial parts of Lilium lancifolium Thunb., collected at flowering time and including bulbils		Majorana/Thuja comp. (02.03.1991)	
Lilium tigrinum	See Lilium lancifolium Thunb.			

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Linum usitatissimum L.	Fatty oil obtained by cold expression from ripe seeds of Linum usitatissimum L. (linseed oil, virgin)	Ph.Eur.		
Linum usitatissimum L.	Dried, ripe seeds of Linum usitatissimum L. (linseed)	Ph.Eur.		
Litsea cubeba Pers.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the fruit of Litsea cubeba Pers.			
Lobaria pulmonaria (L.) Hoffm.	Dried thallus of Lobaria pulmonaria (L.) Hoffm.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Lichenes comp. (04.06.1986)	
Lobelia inflata L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of Lobelia inflata L.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Lobelia inflata L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Lobelia inflata L.	HAB	Lobelia inflata (07.04.1988)	
Lophophora williamsii Coult.	Whole fresh plants of Lophophora williamsii Coult.			
Lycopersicon lycopersicum (L.) Karst. ex Farw.	Fresh aerial parts of Lycopersicon lycopersicum (L.) Karst. ex Farw., collected at flowering time	HAB 34		Der Merkurstab 4/2005: p. 271
Lycopersicon lycopersicum (L.) Karst. ex Farw.	Fresh ripe fruits of Lycopersicon lycopersicum (L.) Karst. ex Farw.			
Lycopodium clavatum L.	Whole spore-bearing plant of Lycopodium clavatum L.		Lycopodium (25.10.1994)	
Lycopodium clavatum L.	Dried ripe spores of Lycopodium clavatum L.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Lycopodium (25.10.1994)	
Lycopus virginicus L.	Fresh aerial parts of Lycopus virginicus L., collected at flowering time	HAB / Ph.fr.		
Lycopus virginicus L.	Whole fresh plant of Lycopus virginicus L., collected at flowering time.			Der Merkurstab 5/2004: p. 359
Lysimachia nummularia L.	Fresh flowering aerial parts of Lysimachia nummularia L.		Dulcamara/Lysimachia (04.06.1986)	
Mahonia aquifolium (Pursh) Nutt.	Dried bark from branches and twigs and dried tips of twigs of Mahonia aquifolium (Pursh) Nutt.	HAB		
Majorana	see Origanum majorana L.			
Maltum	see Hordeum vulgare L.			
Malus sylvestris Mill.	Core from fresh fruit of Malus sylvestris Mill. without kernel		Carpellum Mali comp. (25.10.1994)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Malus sylvestris Mill.	Fresh unripe fruit of Malus sylvestris Mill.			
Malva sylvestris L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of Malva sylvestris L.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Malva sylvestris L.	Whole or fragmented dried flower of Malva sylvestris L. or its cultivated varieties. (mallow flower)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Phosphorus/Malva (25.10.1994)	
Malva sylvestris L.	Dried leaves of Malva sylvestris L.		Malva/Millefolium/ Oxalis (07.04.1988)	
Mandragora officinarum L.	Fresh root of Mandragora officinarum L.		Mandragora (04.06.1986)	
Mandragora officinarum L.	Dried roots of Mandragora officinarum L. and Mandragora autumnalis Bertol.	HAB	Mandragora (04.06.1986)	
Marrubium vulgare L.	Whole or fragmented flowering dried aerial parts of Marrubium vulgare L., collected at flowering time (white horehound)	Ph.Eur.	Sirupus Thymi comp. (04.06.1986)	
Marum verum	see Teucrium marum L.			
Matricaria recutita L.	Fresh flower heads of Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert)		Anagallis/Malachit comp. (25.10.1994)	
Matricaria recutita L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Matricaria recutita L.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Chamomilla (12.09.1992)	
Matricaria recutita L.	Fresh underground parts of Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert) before flowering time		Chamomilla, Radix (04.06.1986)	
Matricaria recutita L.	Dried capitula of Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert) (matricaria flower)	Ph.Eur. / USP	Chamomilla (12.09.1992)	
Matricaria recutita L.	Dried root of Matricaria recutita L. (Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert)		Chamomilla, Radix (04.06.1986)	
Medicago sativa L.	Whole fresh plants of Medicago sativa L., collected at flowering time	Ph.fr.		
Melaleuca leucadendra(L.) L.	Rectified essential oil obtained from fresh leaves and branches of different Melaleuca (sub)species (Ph.Eur. Tea Tree oil: Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from foliage and terminal branchlets of Melaleuca alternifolia (Maiden and Betch) Cheel, M. linariifolia Smith, M. dissitiflora F. Mueller and/or other species of Melaleuca)		Berberis/Eucalyptus/Silicea comp. (02.03.1991)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Melilotus officinalis (L.) Pall.	Fresh aerial parts of Melilotus officinalis (L.) Pall. without ligneous stems collected at flowering time	HAB / Ph.fr.		
Melissa indicum	see Cymbopogon winterianus Jowitt and other Cymbopogon sp.			
Melissa officinalis L.	Fresh leaves of Melissa officinalis L.		Melissa Cupro culta (25.10.1994)	
Melissa officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Melissa officinalis L., before flowering time	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Melissa officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Melissa officinalis L.		Melissa/Sepia comp. (02.03.1991)	
Melissa officinalis L.	Dried leaf of Melissa officinalis L. (melissa leaf)	Ph.Eur.	Majorana/Melissa (02.09.1987)	
Melissa officinalis L.	Dried aerial parts of Melissa officinalis L.		Melissa comp. (03.07.1992)	
Mentha piperita L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the fresh aerial parts of the flowering plant of Mentha x piperita L. (peppermint oil)	Ph.Eur.	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. (02.03.1991)	
Mentha piperita L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of Mentha x piperita L.			
Mentha piperita L.	Whole or cut dried leaves of Mentha x piperita L. (peppermint leaves)	Ph.Eur.	Centaurium comp. (04.06.1986)	
Menyanthes trifoliata L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of Menyanthes trifoliata L.	Ph.fr.		
Mercurialis perennis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Mercurialis perennis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Mercurialis / Rosae aetheroleum (02.03.1991)	
Mercurialis perennis L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of Mercurialis perennis L.	HAB	Mercurialis perennis (02.03.1991)	
Mercurialis perennis L.	Whole dried flowering plant of Mercurialis perennis L.		Calendula/Mercurialis comp. (07.04.1988)	
Mezereum	See Daphne mezereum L.			
Millefolium	See Achillea millefolium L.			
Momordica balsamina L.	Fresh fruit of Momordica balsamina L.			
Monotropa uniflora L.	Whole dried plant of Monotropa uniflora L.			

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Mucuna pruriens (L.) DC	Dried hairs from the fruits of Mucuna pruriens (L.) DC (Ph.fr.: Dolichos pruriens)	HAB / Ph.fr.		
Myristica fragrans Van Houtte	Dried seed kernel of Myristica fragrans Van Houtte	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Myristica fragrans Houtt.	Dried, usually lime-treated seeds of Myristica fragrans Houtt., with aril and testa removed	HAB	Spiritus Melissae comp. (04.06.1986)	
Myristica sebifera	see Virola sebifera Aubl.			
Myroxylon balsamum (L.) Harms	Balsam obtained from the scorched and wounded trunk of Myroxylon balsamum (L.) Harms var. pereirae (Royle) Harms (peru balsam)	Ph.Eur.	Berberis/Eucalyptus/Silicea comp. (02.03.1991)	
Myrrha	see Commiphora Jacq. species			
Nasturtium officinale R. Br.	Whole fresh plant of Nasturtium officinale R. Br.			
Nasturtium officinale R. Br.	Fresh aerial parts of Nasturtium officinale R. Br., collected at flowering time	HAB	Nasturtium Mercurio cultum (25.10.1994)	
Nasturtium officinale R. Br.	Dried aerial parts of Nasturtium officinale R. Br.		Mercurius vivus comp. (02.09.1987)	
Nicotiana tabacum L.	Fresh leaves of Nicotiana tabacum L.	HAB	Tabacum (04.06.1986)	
Nicotiana tabacum L.	Dried fermented leaves of Nicotiana tabacum L.		Tabacum (04.06.1986)	
Nicotiana tabacum L.	Dried unfermented leaves of Nicotiana tabacum L.	HAB	Tabacum (04.06.1986)	
Nux moschata	see Myristica fragrans Van Houtte			
Nux vomica	see Strychnos nux-vomica L.			
Ocimum basilicum L.	Fresh aerial parts of Ocimum basilicum L., collected prior to flowering	HAB	Basilicum comp. (07.04.1988)	
Ocimum basilicum L.	Dried flowering aerial parts of Ocimum basilicum L.		Sal Maris comp. (04.06.1986)	
Olibanum	see Boswellia species			
Onopordum acanthium L.	Fresh leaves of Onopordum acanthium L.		Chelidonium comp. (04.06.1986)	
Onopordum acanthium L.	Fresh flowerhead of Onopordum acanthium L.		Onopordum/Primula comp. (25.10.1994)	
Orchis species or Ophrydeae tribe	Filial tubers of different species of the genus Orchis L. (Orchidaceae) or other suitable intra- and intergeneric Orchis-Hybrids of the tribe Ophrydeae, which have been blanched in boiling water and dried		Cerebellum comp. (02.03.1991)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Origanum majorana L.	Fresh aerial parts of Origanum majorana L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Majorana (07.04.1988)	
Origanum majorana L.	Dried aerial parts of Origanum majorana L.		Majorana (07.04.1988)	
Origanum majorana L.	Ripe fruit of Origanum majorana L.		Capsella/Majorana comp. (04.06.1986)	
Ornithogalum umbellatum L.	Whole fresh plant of Ornithogalum umbellatum L.			
Oxalis acetosella L.	Fresh leaves of Oxalis acetosella L.	HAB	Oxalis (02.09.1987)	
Oxalis acetosella L.	Whole fresh flowering plant of Oxalis acetosella L.		Oxalis (02.09.1987)	
Oxalis acetosella L.	Dried flowering plant of Oxalis acetosella L		Oxalis (02.09.1987)	
Paeonia officinalis L. emend. Willd.	Fresh underground parts of Paeonia officinalis L. emend. Willd., collected during spring	HAB	Hirudo comp. (25.10.1994)	
Panax ginseng C.A. Meyer	Whole or cut dried root, designated white ginseng; treated with steam and then dried, designated red ginseng of Panax ginseng C.A. Meyer. (ginseng)	Ph.Eur. / USP / HAB		Vademecum: Ginseng
Papaver rhoeas L.	Fresh flowers of Papaver rhoeas L.	HAB	Papaver rhoeas (02.03.1991)	
Papaver somniferum L.	Fresh latex obtained from incisions in unripe fruit of Papaver somniferum L.		Papaver somniferum (07.04.1988)	
Papaver somniferum L.	Fresh unripe fruit of Papaver somniferum L.		Papaver somniferum (07.04.1988)	
Paris quadrifolia L.	Whole fresh plants of Paris quadrifolia L., collected when the fruits have ripened	HAB		
Parmelia	see Hypogymnia physodes (L.) Nyl.			
Passiflora caerulea L.	Fresh aerial parts of Passiflora caerulea L. collected at flowering time		Passiflora comp. (25.10.1994)	
Passiflora incarnata L.	Fresh aerial parts of Passiflora incarnata L.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Avena sativa comp. (04.06.1986)	
Peat	Fresh moist peat from moorland [e.g. upland moor]		Solum uliginosum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Pelargonium species	Essential oil obtained by steam destillation from the aerial parts of suitable species of Pelargonium e.g. Pelargonium graveolens Ait.		Rosae aetheroleum/ Silicea colloidalis comp. (03.07.1992)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Petasites hybridus (L.) Ph. Gaertn. B. Mey. et Scherb	Fresh rhizome of Petasites hybridus (L.) Ph. Gaertn. B. Mey. et Scherb. with attached roots		Petasites comp. (12.09.1992)	
Petasites hybridus (L.) Ph. Gaertn. B. Mey. et Scherb.	Whole fresh flowering plant of Petasites hybridus (L.) Ph. Gaertn. B. Mey. et Scherb.		Petasites, Planta tota (12.09.1992)	
Petroselinum crispum (Mill.) Nym. ex A. W. Hill	Whole fresh flowering plants of Petroselinum crispum (Mill.) Nym. ex A. W. Hill convar. crispum, collected at the start of flowering	HAB		
Petroselinum crispum (Mill.) Nym. ex A. W. Hill	Dried roots of Petroselinum crispum (Mill.) Nym. ex A. W. Hill ssp. tuberosum (Bernh. ex Rchb.)			
Peucedanum ostruthium (L.) W. D. J. Koch	Fresh rhizome of Peucedanum ostruthium (L.) W.D.J. Koch		Cichorium/Taraxacum comp. (04.06.1986)	
Peumus boldus Mol.	Whole or fragmented dried leaf of Peumus boldus Molina (boldo leaf)	HAB / Ph.Eur. /Ph.fr.		
Phyllanthus niruri hort. non L.	Dried underground parts of Phyllanthus niruri hort. non L.			
Phyllitis scolopendrium (L.) Newm.	Fresh spore-bearing leaves of Phyllitis scolopendrium (L.) Newm.		Aquilinum comp. (12.09.1992)	
Phyllostachys viridiglaucescens (Carr.) A. et C. Riv.	Nodes from the stem of Phyllostachys species, especially Phyllostachys viridiglaucescens (Carr.) A. et C. Riv., collected in summer		Bambusa (02.03.1991)	
Phytolacca americana L.	Fresh roots of Phytolacca americana L., collected during autumn	HAB	Phytolacca comp. (25.10.1994)	
Phytolacca americana L.	Fresh ripe fruits of Phytolacca americana L.	HAB		
Picea abies (L.) Karst.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of needles and tips of branches or branches of Picea abies (L.) Karsten and of Abies sibirica Ledebour or other species of the genera Abies and Picea	DAB	Salviae aetheroleum comp. (07.04.1988)	
Picea abies (L.) Karst.	Fresh young tips of shoots of Picea abies (L.) Karst.		Petasites/Plantago comp. (12.09.1992)	
Picea nigra (L.) Link	Dried resin from Picea nigra (L.) Link			
Pimpinella anisum L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of the dry ripe fruits of Pimpinella anisum L. (anise oil)	Ph.Eur.	Lichenes comp. (04.06.1986)	
Pimpinella anisum L.	Whole dry cremocarp of Pimpinella anisum L. (aniseed)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Ferrum silicicum comp. (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	
Pinus mugo Turra	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of the fresh leaves and twigs of Pinus mugo Turra. A suitable antioxidant may be added (dwarf pine oil)	Ph.Eur.	Berberis/Juniperus comp. (03.07.1992)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Pinus species	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation, followed by rectification at a temperature below 180 °C, from the oleoresin obtained by tapping Pinus pinaster Aiton. A suitable antioxidant may be added (turpentine oil, Pinus pinaster type)	Ph.Eur.		
Pinus sylvestris L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation of the fresh leaves and branches of Pinus sylvestris L. A suitable antioxidant may be added (pine sylvestris oil)	Ph.Eur.	Oleum camphoratum comp. (03.07.1992)	
Piper nigrum L.	Dried fruit of Piper nigrum L.			
Piper nigrum L.	Fruit of Piper nigrum L., collected and dried before ripening	Ph.Eur.	Gentiana/Zingiber comp. (02.03.1991)	
Pix betulina	Birch tar see Betula pendula Roth, Betula pubescens Ehrhart			
Plantago lanceolata L.	Whole or cut dried herb of Plantago lanceolata L. s.l.	DAB 1999		
Plantago lanceolata L.	Fresh leaves of Plantago lanceolata L.		Bronchi/Plantago comp. (12.09.1992)	
Plantago lanceolata L.	Whole or fragmented, dried leaf and scape of Plantago lanceolata L. s.l. (ribwort plantain)	Ph.Eur.		
Podophyllum peltatum L.	Dried rhizome of Podophyllum peltatum L.	Ph.fr.		
Pollen	Flower pollen			
Polygala amara L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of Polygala amara L.	HAB 34		
Polygonatum odoratum (Mill.) Druce	Fresh, underground parts of Polygonatum odoratum (Mill.) Druce		Vespa crabro comp. (02.03.1991)	
Polypodium vulgare L.	Fresh leaves of Polypodium vulgare L.		Aspidium/Salix comp. (04.06.1986)	
Polypodium vulgare L.	Fresh underground parts of Polypodium vulgare L.			
Populus tremula L.	Fresh leaves of Populus tremula L.		Sabal/Solidago comp. (DAZ Nr.29, 21.07.1994)	
Potentilla erecta (L.) Raeusch.	Whole or cut, dried rhizome, freed from the roots, of Potentilla erecta (L.) Raeusch. (P. tormentilla Stokes) (tormentil)	Ph.Eur.	Corallium comp. (02.09.1987)	
Potentilla erecta (L.) Raeusch.	Fresh underground parts of Potentilla erecta (L.) Raeusch., collected during spring	HAB	Tormentilla (03.07.1992)	
Poterium	see Sacropoterium spinosum (L.) Spach.			
Primula veris L.	Fresh flowers of Primula veris L.		Convallaria/Primula comp. (12.09.1992)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Primula veris L.	Dried flowers of Primula veris L.	Ph.fr.	Primula comp. (02.03.1991)	
Prunus dulcis (Mill.) D.A.Webb var. amara (DC.) Buchheim	Dried, ripe seeds of Prunus dulcis (Mill.) D.A.Webb, var. amara (DC.) Buchheim	HAB		
Prunus dulcis (Miller) D. A. Webb var. dulcis and/or amara (D. C.) Buchheim	Fatty oil otained by cold expression from the ripe seeds of Prunus dulcis (Miller) D.A. Webb var. dulcis or Prunus dulcis (Miller) D.A. Webb var. amara (D.C.) Buchheim or a mixture of both varieties (almond oil, virgin)	Ph.Eur.	Oleum Petrae comp. (03.07.1992)	
Prunus laurocerasus L.	Fresh leaves of Prunus laurocerasus L.	HAB / Ph.fr.		
Prunus spinosa L.	Juice from the fruit of Prunus spinosa L.		Lotio Pruni comp. (04.06.1986)	
Prunus spinosa L.	Fresh flowers and young tips of shoots of Prunus spinosa L.		Prunus spinosa (05.12.1989)	
Prunus spinosa L.	Fresh flowers of Prunus spinosa L., collected before the petals drop off	HAB		
Prunus spinosa L.	Fresh fruit of Prunus spinosa L.		Prunus spinosa (05.12.1989)	
Prunus spinosa L.	Fresh young tips of shoots of Prunus spinosa L., collected some weeks after flowering	HAB	Prunus spinosa (05.12.1989)	
Prunus spinosa L.	Fully opened dried flowers of Prunus spinosa L.	DAC	Prunus spinosa (05.12.1989)	
Psychotria ipecacuanha (Brot.) Stokes	Dried underground organs of Psychotria ipecacuanha (Brot.) Stokes.	HAB	Ipecacuanha (02.09.1987)	
Ptelea trifoliata L.	Fresh bark from young branches of Ptelea trifoliata L.	Ph.fr.		
Pteridium aquilinum (L.) Kuhn	Fresh leaves of Pteridium aquilinum (L.) Kuhn		Aquilinum comp. (12.09.1992)	
Pulmonaria officinalis L.	Fresh aerial parts of Pulmonaria officinalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB		
Pulsatilla vulgaris Mill.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Pulsatilla vulgaris Mill.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Pulsatilla (04.06.1986)	
Pulsatilla vulgaris Mill.	Fresh flowers of Pulsatilla vulgaris Mill. with apical leaf husk.		Pulsatilla (04.06.1986)	
Pyrus malus	See Malus sylvestris Mill.			
Quebracho	See Aspidosperma quebracho-blanco Schlechtend.			
Quercus robur L. and Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl.	Fresh bark from young twigs, branches and shoots of Quercus robur L. and Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl.		Quercus, Cortex (02.03.1991)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Quercus robur L., Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl. and Quercus pubescens Willd.	Cut and dried bark from the fresh young branches of Quercus robur L., Q. petraea (Matt.) Liebl. and Q. pubescens Willd. (oak bark)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Quercus, Cortex (02.03.1991)	
Ranunculus bulbosus L.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Ranunculus bulbosus L.	HAB / Ph.fr.		
Raphanus sativus L.	Fresh underground parts of Raphanus sativus L. var. niger (Mill.) S. Kerner.	HAB		
Raphanus sativus L.	Dried root of Raphanus sativus L. var. niger (Miller) Kerner	Ph.fr.		
Ratanhia	see Krameria triandra Ruiz. et Pav.			
Rauvolfia serpentina (L.) Benth.	Whole or cut, dried roots of Rauvolfia serpentina (L.) Bentham ex Kurz	HAB / DAB	Rauwolfia serpentina (02.09.1987)	
Resina Laricis	see Larix decidua Mill.			
Rhamnus frangula L.	Fresh bark of the stems and branches of Rhamnus frangula L.	HAB	Tropaeolum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Rhamnus purshiana D.C.	Dried, whole or fragmented bark of Rhamnus purshiana D.C. (Frangula purshiana (DC.) A. Gray ex J.G. Cooper) (cascara)	Ph.Eur.		
Rheum officinale Baill., Rheum palmatum L.	Whole or cut, dried underground parts of Rheum palmatum L. or Rheum officinale Baillon or of hybrids of these two species or of a mixture. The underground parts are often divided; the stem and most of the bark with the rootlets are removed (rhubarb)	Ph.Eur. / Ph.fr.		
Rheum rhaponticum L.	Whole or cut, dried underground parts of Rheum rhaponticum L.			Vademecum: Rheum rhaponticum
Rhododendron chrysanthum Pall.	Dried leafy twigs of Rhododendron campylocarpum Hook. f. or Rhododendron chrysanthum Pall., their hybrids, or mixtures thereof	HAB		
Rhododendron ferrugineum L.	Fresh leafy twigs of Rhododendron ferrugineum L.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Rhododendron ferrugineum L.	Fresh flowering leafy twigs of Rhododendron ferrugineum L.			
Rhus toxicodendron L.	Fresh, young leafy branches of Rhus toxicodendron L., collected at the end of summer	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Rhus toxicodendron L.	Fresh, young, not yet lignified shoots of Toxicodendron quercifolium (Michx.) Greene, with leaves	HAB / BP	Rhus toxicodendron (05.12.1989)	
Ribes nigrum L.	Fresh leaves of Ribes nigrum L.	Ph.fr.		
Ricinus communis L.	Fatty oil obtained by cold expression from the seeds of Ricinus communis L. (castor oil, virgin)	Ph.Eur.	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. (02.03.1991)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Ricinus communis L.	Dried seeds of Ricinus communis L.	Ph.fr.		
Robinia pseudoacacia L.	Fresh bark from young branches of Robinia pseudo-acacia L.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Robinia comp. (12.09.1992)	
Robinia pseudoacacia L.	Fresh bark of Robinia pseudoacacia L.			
Rosa canina L.	Rose hips made up by the receptacle and the remains of the dried sepals of Rosa canina L., R. pendulina L. and other Rosa species, with the achenes removed (dog rose)	Ph.Eur.		
Rosa centifolia L.	Fresh petals of Rosa centifolia L.		Rosa, Flos (02.03.1991)	
Rosa L.	Essential oil obtained by steam destillation from fresh flowers of suitable species of the genus Rosa, particularly Rosa gallica L., Rosa damascena Mill. and Rosa centifolia L.		Rosa, Flos (02.03.1991)	
Rosa L.	Substance obtained by stepwise extraction with petrolether and alcohol from fresh flowers of Rosa damascena L. and Rosa centifolia L.		Aurum/Lavandulae aetheroleum/Rosa (04.06.1986)	
Rosa L.	Fresh flowers of suitable species of the genus Rosa L., particularly dark red tea hybrids		Rosa, Flos (02.03.1991)	
Rosa L.	Dried buds and petals of suitable species of the genus Rosa L., particularly Rosa gallica L., Rosa centifolia L., Rosa damascena Mill. as well as dark red tea hybrids		Rosa, Flos (02.03.1991)	
Rosmarinus officinalis L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the flowering aerial parts of Rosmarinus officinalis L. (rosemary oil)	Ph.Eur.	Rosmarinöl (04.06.1986)	
Rosmarinus officinalis L.	Fresh leaves of Rosmarinus officinalis L.	HAB	Rosmarinus (02.09.1987)	
Rosmarinus officinalis L.	Fresh flowering twigs of Rosmarinus officinalis L.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Rosmarinus officinalis L.	Whole dried leaf of Rosmarinus officinalis L. (rosemary leaf)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Rosmarinus (02.09.1987)	
Rumex crispus L.	Fresh underground parts of Rumex crispus L., harvested at the end of the vegetation period	HAB		
Ruta graveolens L.	Fresh aerial parts of Ruta graveolens L., collected at the start of flowering	HAB	Chelidonium/Terebinthina laricina comp. (02.03.1991)	
Ruta graveolens L.	Fresh, aerial, unlignified parts of Ruta graveolens L. before flowering	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Sabadilla	see Schoenocaulon officinale (Cham. et Schlechtend.) A. Gray			
Sabal serrulatum	see Serenoa repens (Bartr.) Small.			
Sabina	see Juniperus sabina L.			
Saccharum officinarum L.	Caramel obtained through the roasting of Saccharum officinarum L.			
Saccharum tostum	see Saccharum officinarum L.			
Salix alba ssp. vitellina (L.) Arcang.	Fresh bark and leaves of Salix alba ssp. vitellina (L.) Archang.		Rhus/Salix comp. (25.10.1994)	
Salix species	Fresh leaves of Salix alba, ssp. alba L. and/or ssp. vitellina (L.) Arcang. and/or Salix purpurea L. and/or Salix viminalis L.		Aspidium/Salix comp. (04.06.1986)	
Salix purpurea L.	Fresh bark and leaves of Salix purpurea L.		Rhus/Salix comp. (25.10.1994)	
Salix species	Whole or fragmented dried bark of young branches or whole dried pieces of current-year twigs of various species of genus Salix including S. purpurea L., S. daphnoides Vill. and S. fragilis L. (willow bark)	Ph.Eur.		
Salix viminalis L.	Fresh bark and leaves of Salix viminalis L.		Rhus/Salix comp. (25.10.1994)	
Salvia officinalis L.	Thujone-rich essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the aerial parts of Salvia officinalis L.	DAC	Majorana/Thuja comp. (02.03.1991)	
Salvia officinalis L.	Fresh leaves of Salvia officinalis L.	HAB	Archangelica/Pyrit comp. (02.03.1991)	
Salvia officinalis L.	Whole or cut dried leaves of Salvia officinalis L. (sage leaf)	Ph.Eur.	Fragaria/Urtica comp. (03.07.1992)	
Sambucus nigra L.	Fresh pith from branches of Sambucus nigra L.		Sambucus comp. (05.12.1989)	
Sambucus nigra L.	Dried pith from branches of Sambucus nigra L.		Sambucus comp. (05.12.1989)	
Sambucus nigra L.	Fresh inflorescence of Sambucus nigra L.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Sambucus nigra L.	Fresh inflorescences of Sambucus nigra L.		Sambucus comp. (05.12.1989)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Sambucus nigra L.	Dried flowers of Sambucus nigra L. (elder flower)	Ph.Eur.	Malva comp. (03.07.1992)	
Sambucus nigra L.	Dried inflorescence of Sambucus nigra L.		Flores Sambuci comp./ Quarz (07.04.1988)	
Sambucus nigra L.	Equal parts of fresh leaves and inflorescences of Sambucus nigra L.	HAB	Sambucus/Teucrium comp. (25.10.1994)	
Sanguinaria canadensis L.	Dried underground parts of Sanguinaria canadensis L., collected in autumn	HAB	Oxalis comp. (04.06.1986)	
Sanicula europaea L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of Sanicula europaea L.	Ph.fr. / HAB	Cichorium comp. (03.07.1992)	Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Sanicula europaea L.	Fresh aerial parts of Sanicula europaea L., collected at flowering time	HAB		
Saponaria officinalis L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of Saponaria officinalis L.	Ph.fr.		
Sarcopoterium spinosum (L.) Spach.	Dried bark from the roots of Sarcopoterium spinosum (L.) Spach.			
Sarothamnus scoparius	see Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link.			
Sarsaparilla	see Smilax regelii Kill. et C. V. Morton, Smilax medica Schlechtend. et Cham. etc.			
Schoenocaulon officinale (Cham. et Schlechtend.) A. Gray	Dried ripe seeds of Schoenocaulon officinale (Cham. et Schlechtend.) A. Gray.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Ferrum phosphoricum comp. (04.06.1986)	
Scilla	see Urginea maritima (L.) Bak. s.l.			
Scolopendrium	see Phyllitis scolopendrium (L.) Newm.			
Scrophularia nodosa L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of Scrophularia nodosa L.	Ph.fr.		
Scutellaria laterifolia L.	Dried whole flowering plant of Scutellaria laterifolia L.			
Secale cornutum	see Claviceps purpurea (Fr.) Tul.			
Sedum acre L.	Fresh aerial parts of Sedum acre L., collected at flowering time	HAB		
Sedum acre L.	Fresh aerial parts of Sedum acre L.			
Sedum telephium L.	Fresh, aerial parts of flowering Sedum telephium L. (Sedum purpureum L.)		Sedum purpureum (07.04.1988)	
Selenicereus grandiflorus (L.) Britt. et Rose	Fresh young stem and flowers of Selenicereus grandiflorus (L.) Britt. et Rose. (Cactus)	HAB	Cactus grandiflorus (12.09.1992)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Semecarpus anacardium L.	Dried fruit of Semecarpus anarcardium L. (Anacardium orientale L.) (oriental cashew for homoeopathic preparations)	HAB / Ph.Eur.		
Senecio bicolor (Willd.) Tod.	Fresh aerial parts of Senecio bicolor (Willd.) Tod., collected before flowering		Cineraria maritima (12.09.1992)	
Senecio jacobaea L.	Fresh aerial parts of Senecio jacobaea L., collected at flowering time		Senecio comp. (12.09.1992)	
Senecio vulgaris L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of Senecio vulgaris L.			
Senega	see Polygala senega L.			
Senna	see Cassia angustifolia Vahl.			
Serenoa repens (Bartr.) Small	Dried ripe fruit of Serenoa repens (Bartr.) Small.	USP / Ph.fr.	Sabal/Solidago comp. (DAZ Nr.29, 21.07.1994)	
Serenoa repens (Bartr.) Small	Fresh ripe fruits of Serenoa repens (Bartr.) Small. (Sabal serrulatum)	HAB		
Silybum marianum (L.) Gaertn.	Mature fruit, devoid of the pappus, of Silybum marianum (L.) Gaertner (milk-thistle fruit)	HAB / Ph.Eur. / Ph.fr. / USP	Carduus marianus (04.06.1986)	
Smilax species	Dried underground parts of Smilax aristolochiifolia Mill. S. medica Schlechtend. et Cham) and related species	Ph.fr.		
Solanum dulcamara L.	Fresh flowers of Solanum dulcamara L.		Dulcamara/Lysimachia (04.06.1986)	
Solanum dulcamara L.	Fresh shoots of Solanum dulcamara L., collected prior to flowering	HAB		
Solanum dulcamara L.	Fresh young leafy branches of Solanum dulcamara L.			
Solanum dulcamara L.	Dried, lignified stems of Solanum dulcamara L. (Dulcamara, Stipites)	DAB6 Erg.B.	Sirupus Thymi comp. (04.06.1986)	
Solanum lycopersicum	See Lycopersicon lycopersicum (L.) Karst. ex Farw.			
Solidago virgaurea L.	Fresh inflorescence of Solidago virgaurea L.	Ph.fr. / HAB		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Solidago virgaurea L.	Fresh aerial parts of Solidago virgaurea L., collected at flowering time		Solidago virgaurea (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	
Solum uliginosum	see peat			

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Spartium scoparium	See Cytisus scoparius (L.) Link.			
Spigelia anthelmia L.	Dried, whole flowering plant of Spigelia anthelmia L.	Ph.fr.		
Spigelia anthelmia L.	Dried aerial parts of Spigelia anthelmia L.	HAB		
Spinacia oleracea L.	Fresh underground parts of Spinacia oleracea L.		Senecio comp. (12.09.1992)	
Spiraea	see Filipendula ulmaria (L.) Maxim.			
Spirito ex vino	See Vitis vinifera L.			
Stachys officinalis (L.) Trev.	Fresh aerial parts of Stachys officinalis (L.) Trev., collected at flowering time	HAB	Betonica/Rosmarinus (12.09.1992)	
Staphisagria	see Delphinium staphisagria L.			
Stellaria media (L.)	Fresh whole plant of Stellaria media (L.)			
Sticta	see Lobaria pulmonaria (L.) Hoffm.			
Stramonium	see Datura stramonium L.			
Strophanthus kombe Oliv.	Fatty oil from the seeds of Strophanthus kombe Oliv.		Oleum Strophanthi (03.07.1992)	
Strophanthus kombe Oliv.	Dried ripe seeds of Strophanthus kombé Oliv.		Strophanthus kombé (02.09.1987)	
Strychnos ignatii Bergius	Dried ripe seeds of Strychnos ignatii Bergius.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Ignatia (02.09.1987)	
Strychnos nux-vomica L.	Dried ripe seeds of Strychnos nux-vomica L.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Nux vomica (04.06.1986)	
Styrax tonkinensis (Pierre) Craib ex Hartwich	Balsam obtained through incisions made into the trunk of Styrax tonkinensis (Pierre) Craib ex Hartwich (Styracaceae)	DAC		
Symphytum officinale L.	Fresh underground parts of Symphytum officinale L.	Ph.fr. / BP	Stannum/Symphytum comp. (12.09.1992)	
Symphytum officinale L.	Fresh aerial parts of Symphytum officinale L., collected at flowering time		Calendula/Urtica comp. (12.09.1992)	
Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merr. et L. M. Perry	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the dried flower buds of Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merill et L. M. Perry (syn. Eugenia caryophyllus [C. Spreng.] Bullock et S.G. Harrison) (clove oil)	Ph.Eur.	Ratanhia comp. (03.07.1992)	
Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merr. et L. M. Perry	Whole flower buds of Syzygium aromaticum (L.) Merill et L.M. Perry (syn. Eugenia caryophyllus [C. Spreng.] Bullock et S.G. Harrison) dried until they become reddish-brown (clove)	Ph.Eur.	Absinthium/ Caryophylli comp. (02.09.1987)	
Syzygium jambos (L.) Alston	Dried seeds of Syzygium jambos (L.) Alston			

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Tabacum	See Nicotiana tabacum L.			
Tanacetum vulgare L.	Fresh aerial parts of Tanacetum vulgare L., collected at flowering time, without stems	HAB		
Taraxacum officinale agg. F.H. Wigg.	Whole fresh flowering plants of Taraxacum officinale agg. F.H. Wigg.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Taraxacum (25.10.1994)	
Taraxacum officinale agg. F.H. Wigg.	Fresh underground parts of Taraxacum officinale agg. F.H. Wigg. collected in autumn (autumnale) or spring (vernale)		Taraxacum (25.10.1994)	
Tartarus crudus	See Vitis vinifera L.			
Teucrium marum L.	Fresh flowering, aerial parts of Teucrium marum L.			
Teucrium marum L.	Fresh aerial parts of Teucrium marum L., without lignified sections of twigs	HAB		
Teucrium scorodonia L.	Fresh aerial parts of flowering plants of Teucrium scorodonia L.	HAB / Ph.fr.	Kalium/Teucrium comp. (25.10.1994)	
Teucrium scorodonia L.	Dried aerial parts of flowering plants of Teucrium scorodonia L.		Species pulmonales (07.04.1988)	
Thuja occidentalis L.	Fresh leafy branches of Thuja occidentalis L., collected preferably in spring	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Thuja occidentalis L.	Fresh, leafy, one-year-old twigs of Thuja occidentalis L.	HAB	Thuja occidentalis (07.04.1988)	
Thymus serpyllum L. emend. Mill.	Dried, whole or cut, flowering aerial shoots of Thymus serpyllum L. sensu latiore	DAB	Sirupus Thymi comp. (04.06.1986)	
Thymus vulgaris L.	Essential oil obtained by steam distillation from the fresh flowering aerial parts of Thymus vulgaris L., T. zygis L. or a mixture of both species. (thyme oil, thymol type)	Ph.Eur.	Thymi aetheroleum (25.10.1994)	
Thymus vulgaris L.	Fresh aerial parts of Thymus vulgaris L., collected at flowering time	HAB		
Thymus vulgaris L.	Whole leaves and flowers separated from the previously dried stems of Thymus vulgaris L. or Thymus zygis L. or a mixture of both species. (thyme)	Ph.Eur.	Sirupus Thymi comp. (04.06.1986)	
Tilia cordata Miller, Tilia platyphyllos Scopoli	Fresh inflorescence of Tilia cordata Miller and Tilia platyphyllos Scopoli		Flores Sambuci/Quarz (07.04.1988)	
Tilia cordata Miller, Tilia platyphyllos Scopoli	Whole, dried inflorescence of Tilia cordata Miller, of Tilia platyphyllos Scop., of Tilia x vulgaris Heyne or a mixture of these (lime flower)	Ph.Eur.	Malva comp. (03.07.1992)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Tormentilla	see Potentilla erecta (L.) Raeusch.			
Toxicodendron	see Toxicodendron quercifolium (Michx.) Greene			
Toxicodendron quercifolium (Michx.) Greene	see Rhus toxicodendron L.			
Triticum aestivum L.	Fatty oil obtained from the germ of the grain of Triticum aestivum L. by cold expression or other suitable mechanical means (wheat-germ oil)	Ph.Eur.		
Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Fresh flowers of Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.			
Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Fresh germinated fruit of Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Ph.fr.	Hirnstamm/Triticum (28. Serie) (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	
Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Fresh parts projecting out of the infloresence spikelet of Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.			
Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Dried germ of the grain of Triticum aestivum L. emend Fiori et Paol. (wheat-germ)		Levisticum comp. (02.09.1987)	
Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.	Wheat gluten			
Triticum repens	see Elymus repens (L.) Gould			
Tricitum vulgare	Dried inflorescences of Triticum aestivum L. emend. Fiori et Paol.		Flores Tritici comp. (12.9.1992)	
Tropaeolum majus L.	Fresh aerial parts of Tropaeolum majus L., collected at flowering time		Tropaeolum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Tulipa silvestris L.	Fresh whole flowering plant of Tulipa silvestris L.			Vademecum: Tulipa
Urginea maritima (L.) Bak.	Fresh, fleshy scale leaves of the red-scaled subspecies of Urginea maritima (L.) Bak. sensu latiore (e.g. Urginea numidica [Jord. et Fourr.] Grey) with a clearly detectable scilliroside content	HAB		
Urginea maritima var. rubra (L.) Baker	Fresh bulb of Urginea maritima var. rubra (L.) Baker		Adonis/Scilla comp. (25.10.1994)	
Urtica dioica L.	Fresh leaves of Urtica dioica L.		Urtica dioica (02.09.1987)	
Urtica dioica L.	Whole,fresh, flowering plants of Urtica dioica L. (Common stinging nettle for homoeopathic preparations)	HAB / Ph.Eur.	Urtica dioica (02.09.1987)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Urtica dioica L.	Fresh aerial parts of Urtica dioica L.		Urtica dioica (02.09.1987)	
Urtica dioica L.	Whole or cut dried leaves of Urtica dioica L., Urtica urens L., or a mixture of the 2 species (nettle leaf)	Ph.Eur.		
Urtica dioica L.	Dried leaves of Urtica dioica L.			
Urtica dioica L.	Dried flowers of Urtica dioica L.		Capsella/Majorana comp. (04.06.1986)	
Urtica dioica L.	Dried, aerial parts with maximum 3 mm thick stems of Urtica dioica L., collected shortly before flowering		Urtica dioica (02.09.1987)	
Urtica urens L.	Fresh, whole flowering plant of Urtica urens L.	Ph.fr.	Berberis, Planta tota/ Urtica urens (02.03.1991)	Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Urtica urens L.	Fresh, whole plant of Urtica urens L.			
Urtica urens L.	Fresh, flowering aerial parts of Urtica urens L.	HAB / BP	Arnica/Urtica urens (04.06.1986)	
Urtica urens L.	Dried, aerial parts of Urtica urens L.			
Usnea barbata (L.) Wigg.	Dried thallus from Usnea P. Br. ex Adans. species, especially Usnea barbata (L.) Wigg.		Lichenes comp. (04.06.1986)	
Vaccinium myrtillus L.	Dried ripe fruit of Vaccinium myrtillus L. (bilberry fruit, dried)	Ph.Eur.		
Vaccinium vitis-idaea L.	Leafy twigs with fresh fruits of Vaccinium vitis-idaea L.			
Valeriana officinalis L.	Fresh flowers of Valeriana officinalis L.			
Valeriana officinalis L.	Fresh, underground parts of Valeriana officinalis L.	Ph.fr.		Formulaire de med. anthr. (2010)
Valeriana officinalis L.	Fresh underground parts of Valeriana officinalis L. sensu latiore	HAB	Valeriana comp. (03.07.1992)	
Valeriana officinalis L.	Dried, whole or fragmented underground parts of Valeriana officinalis L. s.l., including the rhizome surrounded by the roots and stolons (valerian root)	Ph.Eur. / USP		
Vaucheria DC species	Fresh, whole organism of Vaucheria DC species		Vaucheria (25.10.1994)	
Veratrum album L.	Carefully dried rhizome with attached roots of Veratrum album L.	HAB	Drosera/Ipecacuanha comp. (04.06.1986)	
Veratrum album L.	Fresh, underground parts of Veratrum album L.	Ph.fr.	Veratrum album (04.06.1986)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Verbascum densiflorum Bertol.	Fresh, unripe fruits of Verbascum densiflorum Bertol.		Verbascum comp. (12.09.1992)	
Verbascum densiflorum Bertol.	Fresh aerial parts of Verbascum densiflorum Bertol. without woody stems, collected at flowering time	HAB		
Verbascum densiflorum Bertol.	Dried fruit of Verbascum densiflorum Bertol.			
Veronica officinalis L.	Dried aerial parts of Veronica officinalis L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Veronica officinalis (25.10.1994)	
Vinca minor L.	Fresh, whole flowering plant of Vinca minor L.	Ph.fr.		
Vinum	see Vitis vinifera L.			
Viola tricolor L.	Fresh, whole flowering plant of Viola tricolor L. and / or Viola arvensis Murray	Ph.fr.		
Viola tricolor L.	Fresh aerial parts of Viola tricolor L., collected at flowering time	HAB	Tropaeolum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Viola tricolor L.	Dried, flowering aerial parts of Viola arvensis Murray and/or Viola tricolor L. (wild pansy flowering aerial parts)	Ph.Eur.		
Virola sebifera Aubl.	Fresh juice of Virola sebifera Aubl. obtained by incising the bark, and preserved with an approximately equal volume of Ethanol (96 per cent) (Ph.Eur.)	HAB	Myristica sebifera comp. (07.04.1988)	
Viscum album L.	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. abietis (Wiesb.) Abrom. (Host tree: Abies species)		Viscum album (04.06.1986)	
Viscum album L.	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. abietis (Beck) (Wiesb.) Abrom. (Host tree: Abies alba Mill. (Abies pectinata (Lam.) DC); fir)		Viscum album (04.06.1986)	
Viscum album L.	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum alba L. ssp. album (Host trees: Populus species)		Viscum comp. (25.10.1994)	
Viscum album L.	Fresh plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm. (Host tree: Pinus species)		Viscum album (04.06.1986)	
Viscum album L.	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Malus domestica Boekh.; Apple tree)		Viscum album (04.06.1986)	
Viscum album L.	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollm. (Host tree: Pinus sylvestris L.; Pine)		Viscum album (04.06.1986)	

Name of the original plant	Abbreviated definition of the part used	Reference to Standards	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC monograph (date)	Other
Viscum album L.	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Quercus robur L., Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl.; Oak)		Viscum album (04.06.1986)	
Viscum album L.	Fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Ulmus caprinifolia Gled. [Ulmus campestris L.], Ulmus glabra Huds.; Elm)		Viscum album (04.06.1986)	
Viscum album L.	Fresh leafy shoots and fruits of Viscum album L.	HAB		
Viscum album L.	Fresh haustorium of Viscum album L ssp. album (Host tree: Malus species)		Viscum album (04.06.1986)	
Viscum album L.	Fresh shoots collected in summer and flowers collected in winter of Viscum album L. ssp. album (Host tree: Salix alba)			
Viscum album L.	Fresh aerial parts including fruit of Viscum album L. (Host trees: Apple, Birch, Fir, Pine, Lime)			
Viscum album L.	Dried plant including fruit of Viscum album L. ssp. album (Host trees: Oak species) without haustorium.			
Viscum album L.	Dried plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. album (Host trees: Crataegus species)		Viscum album (04.06.1986)	
Viscum album L.	Dried plant including fruit and haustorium of Viscum album L. ssp. album (Host trees: Salix species)		Viscum album (04.06.1986)	
Viscum album L.	Dried branches with leaves, flowers and fruit of Viscum album L. ssp. album (Host trees: Malus species)		Viscum album (04.06.1986)	
Vitex agnus-castus L.	whole, ripe, dried fruits of Vitex agnus-castus L. (agnus castus fruit)	HAB / Ph.Eur. / USP / Ph.fr.	Melissa/Phosphorus comp. (03.07.1992)	
Vitis vinifera L.	Distilled red wine vinegar (acetum vini destillatum)		Kalium aceticum comp. (03.07.1992)	
Vitis vinifera L.	Red wine vinegar (acetum vini)			
Vitis vinifera L.	Dried leaves of Vitis vinifera L.		Vitis comp. (04.06.1986)	
Vitis vinifera L.	Distillate of wine			
Vitis vinifera L.	Cream of tartar (Tartarus crudus)			
Vitis vinifera L.	White wine			
Zea mays L.	Fresh stigma and style of Zea mays L.	Ph.fr.		
Zingiber officinale Rosc.	Dried, whole or cut rhizome of Zingiber officinale Roscoe, with the cork removed, either completely or from the wide, flat surfaces only (ginger)	HAB / Ph.Eur. / USP	Gentiana/Zingiber comp. (02.03.1991)	

APPENDIX 2.3

List of starting materials of zoological origin

Additional Information, see p. 21 and pp. 67-73

Abbreviation *: p. 67

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Acidum Formicae (Acidum formicicum e formica; Acidum Formicae venenum)	Several species of wood ants of the Subgenus *Formica s. str. (e.g. Formica lugubris* ZETT., *F. polyctena* FÖRSTER., *F. paralugubris* SEIFERT *or F. rufa* L.*)*	Aqueous solution of the secretion of wood ants of the Subgenus Formica s. str., containing not less than 1,2% m/m of formic acid			Liste HAS (10.2012)
Ambra grisea	*Physeter catodon* L. *(Physeter macrocephalus* L.*)*	Substance produced in the digestive system of the sperm whale	HAB / Ph. Fr.	Zincum valerianicum comp. (25.10.1994)	
Amnion	*Bos taurus* L.	Amnion from the bovine foetus			Vademecum: Amnion
Anus	*Bos taurus* L.	Anus from the calf		Prunus/Rosmarinus comp. (02.03.1991)	
Aorta	*Bos taurus* L.	Different sections of the aorta from the calf			Vademecum [mentioned under: Atropa belladonna e radice]
Aorta	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Aorta from the rabbit			IVAA statement 2013
Apis mellifica	*Apis mellifera* L.	Whole worker bee	HAB / Ph. Fr. / Ph. Eur.	Apis mellifica (07.04.1988)	
Apis regina	*Apis mellifera* L.	Whole queen cell with larvae and nourishing sap		Apis regina/Aurum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Apisinum	*Apis mellifera* L.	Dried poison from the honey bee	HAB / Ph. Fr.	Zinnober comp. (02.09.1987)	
Appendix vermiformis	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Vermiform process of the blind gut from the rabbit			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Aranea avicularis	*Avicularia avicularia* L.	Whole bird spider			IVAA statement 2013
Aranea diadema	*Araneus diadematus CLERCK*	Whole diadem spider			Vademecum: Aranea
Arteria basilaris*	*Bos taurus* L.	Arteria basilaris from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Arteria brachialis	*Bos taurus* L.	Arteria brachialis from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Arteria carotis communis et sinus caroticus	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts from the Arteria carotis communis dextra and sinistra from the calf			Vademecum: Arteria carotis communis et sinus caroticus

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Arteria cerebri media*	*Bos taurus* L.	Arteria carotis cerebralis and its ramifications from the calf			Vademecum: Arteria cerebri media
Arteria coeliaca	see Truncus coeliacus				IVAA statement 2013
Arteria coronaria	*Bos taurus* L.	Arteria coronaria from the calf			Vademecum: Arteria coronaria
Arteria femoralis	*Bos taurus* L.	Arteria femoralis from the calf			Vademecum [mentioned under: Secale/Bleiglanz comp.]
Arteria ophthalmica*	*Bos taurus* L.	Arteria ophthalmica externa from the calf			Vademecum: Arteria ophthalmica
Arteria poplitea	*Bos taurus* L.	Arteria poplitea from the calf		Bleiglanz/Secale comp. (12.09.1992)	
Arteria pulmonalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Arteria pulmonalis from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Arteria renalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Arteria renalis from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Arteriae*	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of Arteria basilaris, Arteria brachialis, Arteria coronaria, Arteria femoralis, Arteria mesenterica, Arteria pulmonalis and Arteria renalis from the calf			Vademecum: Arteriae
Articulatio	*Bos taurus* L.	The following articulations: cubits, genus, humeri, radiocarpa, sacroiliaca, subtalaris, talocruralis, temporomandibularis			Liste HAS (10.2012) ABMA-Vademecum: Articulatio-Argentum Sirimim P. 49
Articulatio coxae	*Bos taurus* L.	Hip joint with equal parts from the acetabulum, Caput femoris, joint cartilage and Ligamentum capitis femoris from the calf		Articulatio coxae (25.10.1994)	
Articulatio cubiti	*Bos taurus* L.	Elbow joint with parts from the bones that form the joint, joint cartilage, parts of joint capsule, synovia and parts of the ligaments from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Articulatio genus	*Bos taurus* L.	Knee joint with parts from the bones that form the joint, meniscus, joint capsule, ligaments, cartilage and synovia from the calf		Articulatio genus (25.10.1994)	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Articulatio humeri	*Bos taurus* L.	Shoulder joint with parts of the bones that form the joint, cartilage, parts of the joint capsule and the Bursa intertubercularis from the calf			Vademecum [mentioned under: Aconit Schmerzöl]
Articulatio interphalangea	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the toe joint from the fore extremities from the calf		Cartilago/Echinacea comp. (25.10.1994)	
Articulatio radiocarpea	*Bos taurus* L.	Radiocarpal joint with parts of the bones, cartilage, ligaments and joint capsule that form the proximal carpal joint from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Articulatio sacroiliaca	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of Ilium and sacrum from the joint area, joint capsule and ligaments from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Articulatio subtalaris	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the cartilage, joint capsule and synovia of the part distal to the Os centro-quartale of the joint like union between Talus and Calcaneus from the calf		Articulatio talocruralis comp. (12.09.1992)	
Articulatio talocruralis	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the bones forming the joint, Tibia and Talus, of the joint capsule, ligaments as well as synovia of the ankle joint from the calf		Articulatio talocruralis comp. (12.09.1992)	
Articulatio temporomandibularis	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the Os mandibulare and of the Os temporale in the joint area, of the joint capsule, of the ligaments, of cartilage, as well as synovia from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Articulationes intercarpeae	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the bones forming the joint, of the cartilage like surface of the articulation, as well as synovia from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Articulationes intervertebrales cervicales	*Bos taurus* L.	Region of the cervix: Parts of the bone processus that participate to the intervertebral joints, cartilage and joint capsules, as well as synovia from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Articulationes intervertebrales lumbales	*Bos taurus* L.	Region of the loin: Parts of the bone processus that participate to the intervertebral joints, cartilage and joint capsules, as well as synovia from the calf			IVAA statement 2013

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Ascidia	Several species of proto-Chordates of *Ascidia* group	The whole hearing organ			ABMA-Vademecum Arteriae-Barium Sirimim P. 48
Asterias rubens	*Asterias rubens* L.	The whole starfish			IVAA statement 2013
Atlas*	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the Atlas (1. cervical) from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Auditum	*Bos taurus* L.	The whole hearing organ			ABMA-Vademecum Auditum-Argentum Sirimim P. 51
Auditum internum	*Bos taurus* L.	Internal hearing organ			ABMA-Vademecum Labyrinthus-Mercurius Sirimim P. 161
Axis*	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the Axis (2. cervical) from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Badiaga	Several species of fresh water sponges and *Ephydatia fluviatilis* L.	The whole fresh animal			ABMA-Vademecum Larynx-Manganum Sirimim P. 163
Blatta orientalis	*Blatta orientalis* L.	The whole fresh or dried animal			IVAA statement 2013
Bothrops	*Bothrops lanceolatus* BONATERRE	Poison from Bothrops lanceolatus			Der Merkurstab 1993; 46(3): 288-297
Bothrops jaracara	see Lachesis lanceolatus				
Bronchi	*Bos taurus* L.	Bronchi from the calf		Bronchi/Plantago comp. (12.09.1992)	
Bronchi	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Bronchi from the rabbit		Bronchi/Plantago comp. (12.09.1992)	
Bufo rana	*Bufo bufo* L.	Skin of the back from the toad			Der Merkurstab 2000; 53(4): 259-260
Bulbus olfactorius*	*Bos taurus* L.	Bulbus olfactorius of both hemispheres of the cerebrum from the calf			Vademecum: Bulbus olfactorius
Bursae articulationis humeri-Komplex	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of Bursa musculi infraspinam and Bursa intertubercularis humeri from the calf			Vademecum: Bursae articulationis humeri-Komplex
Calcarea carbonica ostrearum	see Conchae				

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Calcium carbonicum Hahnemanni	see Conchae				
Cantharis	*Lytta vesicatoria* L.	As far as possible intact specimens, killed and dried at a temperature not exceeding 40°C	HAB	Cantharis (04.06.1986)	Vademecum: Cantharis
Cardia	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Cardia, parts of the wall of the stomach in the region of the entrance into the stomach from the pig			Vademecum: Cardia
Cartilago articularis	*Bos taurus* L.	Cartilage of the hip, knee and shoulder joints from the calf		Cartilago comp. (12.09.1992)	
Cartilago articularis coxae	*Bos taurus* L.	Cartilage of the hip joint from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Cartilago articularis genus	*Bos taurus* L.	Cartilage of the knee joint from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Cavum tympani*	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the wall of the Cavum tympani, as well as auditory bones from the calf			Vademecum: Cavum tympani
Cera flava	*Apis mellifera* L.	Beeswax obtained by melting the empty honeycombs, washing and elimination of foreign matter	Ph. Eur.	Plantago comp. (12.09.1992)	
Cerebellum*	*Bos taurus* L.	Cerebellum from the calf		Cerebellum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Cerebellum	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Cerebellum from the rabbit		Cerebellum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Cerebrum	*Bos taurus* L.	Cerebrum from the calf		Arnica-Cerebrum (12.09.1992)	
Cerebrum, regio motorica*	*Bos taurus* L.	Grey matter of the Gyrus praecentralis belonging to the Lobus frontalis of both hemispheres from the calf			Vademecum: Cerebrum, regio motorica
Cervix uteri	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the neck of uterus from the cow			IVAA statement 2013
Circulus arteriosus cerebri*	*Bos taurus* L.	Circulus arteriosus cerebri of the pituitary shaft from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Coccus cacti	*Dactylopius coccus* COSTA	The dried, fertilized, female of Dactylopius coccus Costa	HAB / Ph. Fr.		IVAA statement 2013

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Cochlea*	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the cochlea from the skeletous as well as dermal parts of the inner ear from the calf			Vademecum: Cochlea
Cod liver oil (type B)	see jecoris aselli oleum				
Colon	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Colon from the pig		Colon (25.10.1994)	
Colon sigmoideum	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Colon sigmoideum, parts of the final tract of the Colon descendens from the pig			Vademecum [mentioned under: Erysidoron® 1; Mercurius vivus naturalis]
Columna	*Bos taurus* L.	Spinal cord obtained from foetus of Bos taurus L.			ABMA-Vademecum: Columna-Argentum Sirimim P. 97
Columna anterior*	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the columna anterior of the spinal chord from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Columna posterior*	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the columna posterior of different parts of the spinal chord from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Conchae	*Ostrea edulis* L.	The inner parts of the shells of the oyster	HAB / Ph. Fr.	Conchae (04.06.1986)	Vademecum: Conchae
Conjunctiva	*Bos taurus* L.	Conjunctiva from the calf		Conjunctiva comp. (25.10.1994)	
Connective tissue	see Textus connectivus				
Cor	*Bos taurus* L.	Cor (heart) from the calf		Cor (25.10.1994)	
Cor	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the epicardium, myocardium, endocardium and the arterial musculature of the heart from the calf		Cor (25.10.1994)	
Corallium	Several species of red Coral	Secretion obtained by trituration of fresh animal			ABMA-Vademecum: Corallium rubrum P. 104
Corallium rubrum	*Corallium rubrum* L.	Fragmented parts of the chalk skeleton from Corallium rubrum, containing at least 82 per cent CaCO3 (Mr 100,1)	HAB	Kalium aceticum comp. (03.07.1992)	
Cornea	*Bos taurus* L.	Cornea from the calf		Cornea/Levisticum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Cornu Caprae ibecis	*Capra ibex* L.	Horn from the ibex			IVAA statement 2013

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Cornu Cervi	*Cervus elaphus* L.	Antlers from the deer			Liste HAS (10.2012)
Corpora quadrigemina*	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the Lamina tecti with the Corpora quadrigemina from the calf		Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. (03.07.1992)	
Corpus amygdaloideum*	*Bos taurus* L.	Brain matter of the region of the Corpus amygdaloideum from the calf			Vademecum: Corpus amygdaloideum
Corpus luteum	*Bos taurus* L.	Corpus luteum from the calf		Melissa/Phosphorus comp. (03.07.1992)	
Corpus luteum	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Corpus luteum from the sow		Melissa/Phosphorus comp. (03.07.1992)	
Corpus striatum*	*Bos taurus* L.	Corpus striatum from the calf			Vademecum [mentioned under: Regio substantiae nigrae]
Corpus vitreum*	*Bos taurus* L.	Corpus vitreum from the calf		Corpus vitreum/Hornerz comp. (02.03.1991)	
Corpus vitreum	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Corpus vitreum from the rabbit		Corpus vitreum/Hornerz comp. (02.03.1991)	
Crotalus horridus	*Crotalus horridus* L.	Freeze dried poison from Crotalus horridus L.	HAB		Der Merkurstab 1993; 46(3): 288-297
Crotalus terrificus	*Crotalus durissus terrificus* LAURENTI	Freeze dried poison from Crotalus durissus terrificus Laurenti			Der Merkurstab 1993; 46(3): 288-297
Cutis (feti)	*Bos taurus* L.	The external skin of a 3 to 9 months old bovine foetus		Calendula/Tropaeolum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Cutis (feti femini)	*Bos taurus* L.	The external skin of a ca. 5 months old female bovine foetus		Prunus/Rosmarinus comp. (02.03.1991)	
Dactylopius coccus	see *Coccus cacti*				
Dens	*Bos taurus* L.	Teeth from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Diaphragma	*Bos taurus* L.	Muscular and tendinous parts of the diaphragm from the calf			Vademecum [mentioned under: Regio substantiae nigrae]
Diaphragma pelvis	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the muscle and fascies closing the pelvis, including connective tissue from the calf			Vademecum: Diaphragma pelvis
Diencephalon*	*Bos taurus* L.	Diencephalon from the calf			IVAA statement 2013

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Disci intervertebrales (cervicales)	*Bos taurus* L.	Fibrocartilage of intervertebral discs of cervical spine from the calf			Vademecum [mentioned under: Disci intervertebrales (feti)]
Disci intervertebrales (cervicales, thoracici et lumbales)	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of intervertebral discs of cervical, thoracic and lumbar spine from the calf		Disci comp. cum Argento (05.12.1989)	
Disci intervertebrales (feti)	*Bos taurus* L.	Intervertebral discs of different regions of the spine from a 3 to 9 months old bovine foetus			Vademecum: Disci intervertebrales (feti)
Disci intervertebrales (lumbales)	*Bos taurus* L.	Intervertebral discs of lumbar spine from the calf			Vademecum [mentioned under: Disci intervertebrales (feti)]
Ductus choledochus	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Ductus choledochus from the pig			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Ductus deferens	*Bos taurus* L.	Ductus deferens from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Ductus thoracicus	*Bos taurus* L.	Ductus thoracicus from the calf		Borago/Renes comp. (12.09.1992)	
Duodenum	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Parts of duodenum from the pig			Vademecum [mentioned under: Plexus gastricus]
Dura mater encephali*	*Bos taurus* L.	Dura mater encephali from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Elaps	*Micrurus corallinus* MERREM	Poison from Micrurus corallinus Merrem			IVAA statement 2013
Endocardium	*Bos taurus* L.	Endocardium from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Endometrium	*Bos taurus* L.	Endometrium from the cow		Endometrium comp. (25.10.1994)	
Endometrium	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Endometrium from the pig		Endometrium comp. (25.10.1994)	
Epididymis	*Bos taurus* L.	Left epididymis from the bull			IVAA statement 2013
Epiphysis*	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the epiphysis from the calf		Epiphysis (12.09.1992)	
Epiphysis	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Parts of the epiphysis from the rabbit		Epiphysis (12.09.1992)	
Erytrocytes	*Equus przewalskii f. caballus* POLIAKOV	Erythrocytes from the blood of the horse			IVAA statement 2013

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Fasciculus atrioventricularis	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the conduction system of the heart, His´s bundle and Purkinje´s fiber from the calf			Vademecum: Fasciculus atrioventricularis
Fasciculus opticus*	*Bos taurus* L.	Fasciculus opticus from the calf			Liste HAS (10.2012)
Favus	*Apis mellifera* L.	honeycombs with pollen			IVAA statement 2013
Fel piscis	*Salmo trutta* L.	Bile from predatory fish, e.g. trout			Der Merkurstab 2004; 57(3): 224
Fel tauri	*Bos taurus* L.	Fresh bile from gall bladder from the calf		Glandulae suprarenales comp. (12.09.1992)	
Fel	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Bile from gall bladder from the rabbit		Glandulae suprarenales comp. (12.09.1992)	
Femur	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the diaphysis of Os femoris from the calf			Vademecum: Femur
Folliculi lymphatici aggregati	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Parts of Peyers's patch of the small intestine from the pig			IVAA statement 2013
Formica	*Formica rufa* L., *Formica polyctena* FÖRSTER L.	Live worker ants	HAB / Ph. Fr.	Formica (07.04.1988)	Vademecum: Formica
Formica parva	*Lasius niger*	Live worker ants			Liste HAS (10.2012)
Funiculus umbilicalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Funiculus umbilicalis from a bovine foetus between the third and ninth month of pregnancy		Calendula/ Tropaeolum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Galea aponeurotica	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the superficial fascia of the forehead from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Gingiva	*Bos taurus* L.	Gingiva from the calf		Periodontium/Silicea comp. (12.09.1992)	
Glandula lacrimalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Lacrimal gland from the calf			Vademecum: Glandula lacrimalis
Glandula parotis	*Bos taurus* L.	Glandular tissue of the body of the parotid gland from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Glandula suprarenalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Suprarenal gland from the calf		Glandula suprarenalis (25.10.1994)	
Glandula suprarenalis (Cortex)	*Bos taurus* L.	Suprarenal gland (Cortex) from the calf			IVAA statement 2013

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Glandula suprarenalis (Medulla)	*Bos taurus* L.	Marrow of the suprarenal gland of both adrenal glands from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Glandula suprarenalis dextra	*Bos taurus* L.	Right suprarenal gland from the calf		Cuprum/Glandula suprarenalis dextra (02.03.1991)	
Glandula suprarenalis sinistra	*Bos taurus* L.	Left suprarenal gland from the calf		Cuprum/Glandula suprarenalis sinistra (02.03.1991)	
Glandula Thymus	see Thymus (Glandula)				
Glandula thyreoidea	*Bos taurus* L.	Thyroid gland from the calf		Glandula thyreoidea (07.04.1988)	
Glandula thyreoidea	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Thyroid gland from the rabbit		Glandula thyreoidea (07.04.1988)	
Glandulae parathyreoideae	*Bos taurus* L.	Parathyroid gland from the calf		Parathyreoidea comp. (02.03.1991)	
Glandulae parathyreoideae	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Parathyroid gland from the pig		Parathyreoidea comp. (02.03.1991)	
Glandulae suprarenales	see Glandula suprarenalis				
Glucogenum	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Glycogen from the rabbit liver			IVAA statement 2013
Gyrus cinguli*	*Bos taurus* L.	Gyrus cinguli from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Hepar	*Bos taurus* L.	Pars intermedia of the liver from the calf		Hepar (25.10.1994)	
Hepar	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Liver from the rabbit			IVAA statement 2013
Hippocampus*	*Bos taurus* L.	Hippocampus from the calf			Vademecum: Hippocampus
Hirudo ex animale	*Hirudo medicinalis* L.	Leech immediately after sacrifice		Vespa crabro comp. (02.03.1991)	
Hypophysis*	*Bos taurus* L.	Hypophysis from the calf		Hypophysis (12.09.1992)	
Hypophysis	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Hypophysis from the rabbit		Hypophysis (12.09.1992)	
Hypothalamus*	*Bos taurus* L.	Hypothalamus from the calf			Vademecum: Hypothalamus

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Iecoris aselli oleum	*Gadidae*	Cod liver oil: (type A or B) Purified fatty oil obtained from the fresh livers of Gadus morhua L. and other species of Gadidae, solid substances being removed by cooling and filtering	Ph. Eur.	Berberis/Chelidonium comp. (02.03.1991)	
Ileum	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Ileum from the pig			Vademecum [mentioned under: Nux vomica/Nicotiana comp.]
Iris	*Bos taurus* L.	Iris from the calf		Iris bovis comp. (02.03.1991)	
Jecoris oleum	see Iecoris aselli oleum				
Jejunum	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Jejunum from the pig			IVAA statement 2013
Keratinum Equi	*Equus przewalskii f. caballus* POLIAKOV	Hoof from the horse			IVAA statement 2013
Labyrinthus*	*Bos taurus* L.	Cochlea and labyrinth from the calf		Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. (03.07.1992)	
Lac caninum	*Canis lupus familiaris* L.	Fresh milk from the female dog			ABMA-Vademecum Mamma-Argentum Sirimim P. 169
Lachesis	*Lachesis melanocephala* SOLÒRZANO & CERDAS, *Lachesis stenophrys* Cope *or Lachesis muta* L.	Carefully dried poison from Lachesis melanocephala Solòrzano & Cerdas, Lachesis stenophrys Cope or Lachesis muta L.	HAB	Lachesis (02.03.1991)	Vademecum: Lachesis
Lachesis lanceolatus	*Bothrops jararaca* WIED.	Poison from Bothrops jararaca Wied.			Der Merkurstab 1993; 46(3): 288-297
Lac vaccae	*Bos taurus* L.	Fresh cow's milk			IVAA statement 2013
Lamina quadrigemina*	*Bos taurus* L.	Lamina quadrigemina from the calf		Lamina/Retina comp. (25.10.1994)	
Lathrodectus	*Lathrodectus mactans Koch*	Living spider of Lathrodectus mactans Koch			ABMA-Vademecum Cor-Arsenicum album Sirimim P. 105
Lapis cancri	*Astacus astacus* L.	The gastrolithes from the body cavity from Astacus astacus L. or other crayfish			Liste HAS (10.2012)

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Larynx	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the larynx from the calf		Apis/Larynx comp. (25.10.1994)	
Lens cristallina	*Bos taurus* L.	Lens cristallina from the calf		Lens cristallina/Viscum comp. cum Stanno (02.03.1991)	
Lien	*Bos taurus* L.	Spleen from the calf		Lien comp. (25.10.1994)	
Ligamentum longitudinale anterius	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the Ligamentum longitudinale anterius of thoracic and lumbar regions of the spine from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Ligamentum longitudinale posterius*	*Bos taurus* L.	Ligamentum longitudinale dorsale from the calf			Vademecum: Ligamentum longitudinale posterius
Ligamentum vocale	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the vocal chords included the mucous membrane of the larynx from the calf			Vademecum [mentioned under: Larynx comp.]
Lingua	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the tongue muscles, mucous membrane and papillae from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Liquor cerebrospinalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Cerebrospinal fluid from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Lobus frontalis*	*Bos taurus* L.	Frontal lobe of cerebrum from the calf			Glöckler, M.: "Anthroposophische Arzneitherapie" (Anthroposophic Therapy with Medicinal Products), Publisher Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft, Stuttgart 2010
Lobus occipitalis*	*Bos taurus* L.	Occipital lobe of cerebrum from the calf			Glöckler, M.: "Anthroposophische Arzneitherapie" (Anthroposophic Therapy with Medicinal Products), Publisher Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft, Stuttgart 2010

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Lobus parietalis*	*Bos taurus* L.	Parietal lobe of the cerebrum from the calf			Glöckler, M.: "Anthroposophische Arzneitherapie" (Anthroposophic Therapy with Medicinal Products), Publisher Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft, Stuttgart 2010
Lobus temporalis*	*Bos taurus* L.	Temporal lobe from the calf			Glöckler, M.: "Anthroposophische Arzneitherapie" (Anthroposophic Therapy with Medicinal Products), Publisher Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft, Stuttgart 2010
Mamma	*Bos taurus* L.	Glandular tissue from bovine udder		Magnesit/Mamma comp. (12.09.1992)	
Mamma (dextra)	*Bos taurus* L.	Glandular tissue from right part of bovine udder			Vademecum: Mamma
Mamma (sinistra)	*Bos taurus* L.	Glandular tissue from left part of bovine udder			Vademecum: Mamma
Mandibula (feti)	*Bos taurus* L.	Mandible from a bovine foetus between 3 and 9 months		Periodontium/Silicea comp. (12.09.1992)	
Marmot fat	see Marmottae oleum				
Marmottae oleum	*Marmota species*	Fat from brown adipose tissue from different species of marmota, e.g. Marmota marmota L., Marmota bobak sibirica Radde, Marmota camtschatica Pallas		Sal Maris comp. (04.06.1986)	
Maxilla (feti)	*Bos taurus* L.	Maxilla from a bovine foetus between 3 and 9 months		Periodontium/Silicea comp. (12.09.1992)	
Medulla oblongata*	*Bos taurus* L.	Medulla oblongata from the calf		Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. (03.07.1992)	
Medulla oblongata	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Medulla oblongata from the rabbit		Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. (03.07.1992)	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Medulla ossium (rubra)	*Bos taurus* L.	Red bone marrow from the epiphysis of tubular bones from the calf		Medulla ossium (25.10.1994)	
Medulla ossium (rubra)	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Red bone marrow from the epiphysis of tubular bones from the rabbit		Medulla ossium (25.10.1994)	
Medulla spinalis tota*	*Bos taurus* L.	Medulla spinalis of different sections from the calf			Vademecum: Medulla spinalis tota
Mel	*Apis mellifera* L.	Honey	Ph. Eur.	Aesculus/Cera comp. (02.03.1991)	
Membrana sinus frontalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Mucosa of Sinus frontalis from the calf			Liste HAS (10.2012)
Membrana sinus maxillaris	*Bos taurus* L.	Mucosa of Sinus maxillaris from the calf			Glöckler, M.: "Anthroposophische Arzneitherapie" (Anthroposophic Therapy with Medicinal Products), Publisher Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft, Stuttgart
Membrana sinus paranasalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Mucosa of sinus paranasales from the calf		Hepar sulfuris comp. (05.12.1989)	
Membrana synovialis	*Bos taurus* L.	Inner layer of the joint capsule of different joints from the calf			Vademecum [mentioned under: Salix/Rhus comp.]
Meniscus articularis	*Bos taurus* L.	Meniscus articularis of the knee from calf		Meniscus Genus/Stannum (25.10.1994)	Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Meniscus genus	*Bos taurus* L.	Meniscus of the knee from the calf		Mandragora comp. (07.04.1988)	
Mephitis putorius	*Mephitis mephitis* SCHREB.	Liquid secretion of anal glands from Mephitis mephitis Schreb.			IVAA statement 2013
Mesencephalon*	*Bos taurus* L.	Mesencephalon from the calf			Vademecum [mentioned under: Regio substantiae nigrae]

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Mesenchym	*Bos taurus* L.	Embryonal connective tissue and tissue parts of the adult animal. Foetal tissues developed from mesenchyma with a high mesenchymal function: uterus of the adult animal; foetal slack connective tissue (e.g. from axilla), thymus, heart tissue (without valves), red bone marrow with reticular connective tissue and spongious bones, nucleus pulposus intervertebralis, mesenterium		Mesenchym (25.10.1994)	
Mesenchym	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.				Liste HAS (10.2012)
Moschus	*Moschus moschiferus* L.	Secretion of bursa from male Moschus moschiferus L.	Ph. Fr.		IVAA statement 2013
Mucosa buccalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Buccal mucosa from the calf			ABMA-Vademecum Cydonia-Silicea Sirimim P. 117
Musculi	*Bos taurus* L.	Bovine gluteal muscles and biceps muscle of the arm (age 1,5-4 years)			ABMA-Vademecum: Musculi-Aurum Sirimim P. 178
Musculi glutaei	*Bos taurus* L.	Gluteal muscles from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Musculus deltoideus-Komplex	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the Musculus deltoideus-complex, Musculus supra spinam, Musculus infra spinam, Musculus deltoideus, Musculus biceps brachii and Musculus triceps brachii from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Musculus rectus abdominis	*Bos taurus* L.	Musculus rectus abdominis from the calf			Vademecum: Musculus rectus abdominis
Musculus soleus-Komplex	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the Musculus soleus-Komplex, Musculus soleus, Musculus fibularis (peronaeus) longus, Musculus gastrocnemius from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Mygale avicularis	see *Aranea avicularis*				IVAA statement 2013
Mygale	Several species of the *Mygale sp, Theraphrosa sp, Lasiodora sp*	Living spider			ABMA-Vademecum Hepar-Plumbum Sirimim P. 148

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Myocardium	*Bos taurus* L.	Myocardium from the calf		Primula comp. (02.03.1991)	
Naja tripudians	*Naja naja* L.	Carefully dried poison from Naja naja L.	HAB		IVAA statement 2013
Nervi intercostales	*Bos taurus* L.	Intercostal Nerves from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nervus abducens*	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus abducens from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Nervus accessorius	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus accessorius from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Nervus facialis*	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus facialis from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nervus femoralis	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus femoralis from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Nervus glossopharyngeus	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus glossopharyngeus from the calf			Glöckler, M.: "Anthroposophische Arzneitherapie" (Anthroposophic Therapy with Medicinal Products), Publisher Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft, Stuttgart
Nervus hypoglossus	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus hypoglossus from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Nervus ischiadicus	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus ischiadicus from the calf		Nervus ischiadicus (25.10.1994)	
Nervus ischiadicus	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Nervus ischiadicus from the rabbit		Nervus ischiadicus (25.10.1994)	
Nervus laryngeus recurrens	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus laryngeus recurrens from the calf		Apis/Larynx comp. (25.10.1994)	
Nervus laryngeus superior	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus laryngeus superior from the calf		Apis/Larynx comp. (25.10.1994)	
Nervus medianus	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus medianus from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nervus oculomotorius*	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus oculomotorius from the calf		Nervus opticus comp. (03.07.1992)	
Nervus ophtalmicus	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus ophtalmicus from the calf		Iris bovis comp. (02.03.1991)	
Nervus opticus*	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus opticus from the calf		Nervus opticus comp. (03.07.1992)	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Nervus opticus	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Nervus opticus from the rabbit		Nervus opticus comp. (03.07.1992)	
Nervus peronaeus	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus peronaeus (fibularis) from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nervus phrenicus	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus phrenicus from the calf			Vademecum: Nervus phrenicus
Nervus pudendus	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus pudendus from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Nervus radialis	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus radialis from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Nervus statoacusticus*	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus statoacusticus from the calf		Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. (03.07.1992)	
Nervus statoacusticus	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Nervus statoacusticus from the rabbit		Arnica/Epiphysis/Plumbum mellitum comp. (03.07.1992)	
Nervus tibialis	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus tibialis from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Nervus trigeminus*	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus trigeminus from the calf		Nervus trigeminus (25.10.1994)	
Nervus trigeminus	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Nervus trigeminus from the rabbit		Nervus trigeminus (25.10.1994)	
Nervus trochlearis*	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus trochlearis from the calf			Der Merkurstab 2005; 58(4): 310-315
Nervus ulnaris	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus ulnaris from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Nervus vagus	*Bos taurus* L.	Nervus vagus from the calf		Apis/Larynx comp. (25.10.1994)	
Nervus vagus	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Nervus vagus from the rabbit		Apis/Larynx comp. (25.10.1994)	
Nodi lymphatici	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of lymph node tissue from different parts of the body from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Nucleus ruber*	*Bos taurus* L.	Brain substance from the Nucleus ruber from the calf			Der Merkurstab 2005; 58(4): 310-315
Oesophagus	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Oesophagus from the pig			IVAA statement 2013
Ossa	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Bones from the pig			Liste HAS (10.2012)

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Ossa	*Aves variae, e.g. Phasianus colchicus* L.	Cleaned and milled bones from birds, e.g. Phasianus colchicus L.			Liste HAS (10.2012)
Ossa longa	*Bos taurus* L.	Ossa longa from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Ossicula auditus*	*Bos taurus* L.	Auditory bones from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Ovaria	see *Ovarium*				
Ovarium	*Bos taurus* L.	Ovary from the cow		Ovarium (28. Serie) (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	
Pancreas	*Bos taurus* L.	Pancreas from the calf		Pankreas (03.07.1992)	
Pancreas	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Pancreas from the rabbit		Pankreas (03.07.1992)	
Pancreas	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Pancreas from the pig		Pankreas (03.07.1992)	
Papillae duodeni	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Papilla duodeni region of the small intestine from the pig			IVAA statement 2013
Parametrium	*Bos taurus* L.	Tissue from the broad ligament of the uterus from the cow		Echinacea/Parametrium comp. (25.10.1994)	
Parametrium dextrum	*Bos taurus* L.	Tissue from the right broad ligament of the uterus from the cow			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Pars fetalis (placenta)	*Bos taurus* L.	Allantochorion from the bovine foetus		Prunus/Rosmarinus comp. (02.03.1991)	
Pars pallida*	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the base of the brain from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Patella	*Bos taurus* L.	Patella from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Pelvis renalis (et Ureter)	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the Pelvis renalis and Ureter from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Penis	*Bos taurus* L.	Penis from the bull			IVAA statement 2013
Pericardium	*Bos taurus* L.	Pericardium from the calf			Glöckler, M.: "Anthroposophische Arzneitherapie" (Anthroposophic Therapy with Medicinal Products), Publisher Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft, Stuttgart 2010
Periodontium	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the alveolar and dentals regions from the calf		Periodontium/Silicea comp. (12.09.1992)	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Periosteum	*Bos taurus* L.	Periosteum from the calf		Allium cepa/Tendo comp. (12.09.1992)	
Periosteum	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Periosteum from the rabbit		Allium cepa/Tendo comp. (12.09.1992)	
Peritonaeum	*Bos taurus* L.	Peritonaeum from the calf		Bryonia/Viscum comp. (25.10.1994)	
Peritonaeum	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Peritonaeum from the rabbit		Bryonia/Viscum comp. (25.10.1994)	
Pharynx	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts from the Pharynx digestorium and Pharynx respiratorius from the calf			Vademecum: Pharynx
Physeter catodon	see *Ambra grisea*				
Physeter macrocephalus	see *Ambra grisea*				
Pia mater encephali*	*Bos taurus* L.	Pia mater encephali from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Placenta	*Bos taurus* L.	Placentomas from the pregnant cow		Placenta/Tropaeolum (02.03.1991)	Glöckler, M.: "Anthroposophische Arzneitherapie" (Anthroposophic Therapy with Medicinal Products), Publisher Wissenschaftliche Verlagsgesellschaft, Stuttgart
Pleura	*Bos taurus* L.	Pleura parietalis from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Plexus brachialis	*Bos taurus* L.	Plexus brachialis from the calf			Vademecum [mentioned under: Disci/Rhus toxicodendron comp.]
Plexus cardiacus	*Bos taurus* L.	Plexus cardiacus from the calf			Vademecum: Plexus cardiacus
Plexus coeliacus	*Bos taurus* L.	Plexus coeliacus from the calf			Vademecum: Plexus coeliacus
Plexus gastricus	*Bos taurus* L.	Plexus gastricus from the calf			Vademecum: Plexus gastricus
Plexus haemorrhoidalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Venous network in the region of the rectum from the calf			Vademecum: Plexus haemorrhoidalis

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Plexus lumbalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Plexus lumbalis from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Plexus pelvinus	*Bos taurus* L.	Plexus pelvinus from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Plexus pulmonalis (Nervus vagus)	*Bos taurus* L.	Plexus pulmonalis from the calf			Vademecum: Plexus pulmonalis (Nervus vagus)
Plexus rectalis	see *Plexus haemorrhoidalis*				IVAA statement 2013
Plexus sacralis	*Bos taurus* L.	Plexus sacralis from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Pons*	*Bos taurus* L.	Pons from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Portio vaginalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Portio vaginalis from the cow			IVAA statement 2013
Propolis	*Apis mellifera* L.	Propolis	Ph. Fr.		Der Merkurstab 2011; 64(4): 338
Prostata	*Bos taurus* L.	Prostata from the bull		Berberis/Prostata comp. (12.09.1992)	
Pudendum feminium	*Bos taurus* L.	Labia vulvae, Klitoris and Glandula vestibularis major from the cow		Prunus/Rosmarinus comp. (02.03.1991)	
Pulmo	*Bos taurus* L.	Lung tissue from the calf		Ferrum/Pulmo (12.09.1992)	
Pulmo	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Lung from the rabbit		Ferrum/Pulmo (12.09.1992)	
Pulpa dentis	*Bos taurus* L.	Pulpa dentis from the calf			Vademecum: Pulpa dentis
Pylorus	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Pylorus from the pig			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Rectum	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Rectum from the pig			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Regio substantiae nigrae*	*Bos taurus* L.	Tissue from the Substantia nigra from the calf			Vademecum: Regio substantiae nigrae
Renes	*Bos taurus* L.	Kidney from the calf		Ren (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	
Renes	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Kidney from the rabbit		Ren (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Renes, regio pyelorenalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of tissue from the Pelvis renalis and Medulla renalis from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Reticuloendothelial System	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts from the thymus gland, lymh nodes, bone marrow, liver and spleen from the calf			Vademecum [mentioned under: Levico comp.]
Retina (et Chorioidea)*	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the Retina and the Chorioidea from the calf		Retina (28. Serie) (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	
Sclera*	*Bos taurus* L.	Sclera from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Scolopendra	*Several species of Scolopendra* family	Living centipede of Scolopendrideae family			ABMA-Vademecum Sinus facialis-Mercurius Sirimim P. 238
Sepia officinalis e volumine bursae rec.	*Sepia officinalis* L.	Fresh secretion from ink gland from Sepia officinalis L.		Berberis/Sepia comp. (25.10.1994)	
Sepia gruneris	*Sepia officinalis* L.	Dried secretion from ink gland from Sepia officinalis L.	HAB		Der Merkurstab 1997; 52(1): 51
Sepia officinalis	*Sepia officinalis* L.	Dried ink bag from Sepia officinalis L.	Ph. Fr.		Der Merkurstab 1997; 52(1): 51
Sinus cavernosus-Komplex*	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the sinus cavernosus-Komplex; Sinus cavernosus, Nervus opticus, Nervus oculomotorius, Nervus trochlearis, Nervus trigeminus and Nervus abducens from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Spongia tosta	*Euspongia officinalis* L.	Toasted Euspongia officinalis L.	HAB / Ph. Fr.	Spongia (02.03.1991)	Vademecum: Spongia
Sympathicus	see *Truncus sympathicus*				
Tarantula hispanica	*Lycosa hispanica Walckenaer*	The whole spider Lycosa tarantula L., Allocosa fasciiventris Duf., or Hogna hispanica Walckenaer			IVAA statement 2013
Tendo	*Bos taurus* L.	Tendo from the calf		Allium cepa/Tendo comp. (12.09.1992)	
Testa ovi	*Gallus gallus domesticus* L.	Shell of hen's eggs		Aurum/Pulsatilla/ Spongia comp. (03.07.1992)	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Testes	*Bos taurus* L.	Testes from the bull		Testes comp. (28. Serie) (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	
Testes	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Testes from the (male) rabbit		Testes comp. (28. Serie) (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	
Textus connectivus	*Bos taurus* L.	Subcutaneous and intermuscular connective tissue, fascia, ligaments, tendons, as well as mesenterium from the calf		Borago/Renes comp. (12.09.1992)	
Thalamus*	*Bos taurus* L.	Thalamus from the calf		Arnica/Hypophysis/ Plumbum mellitum comp. (03.07.1992)	
Thalamus	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Thalamus from the rabbit		Arnica/Hypophysis/ Plumbum mellitum comp. (03.07.1992)	
Thrombocytes	*Equus przewalskii f. caballus* POLIAKOV	Thrombocytes from the blood of the horse			IVAA statement 2013
Thymus (Glandula)	*Bos taurus* L.	Thymus from the calf		Glandula Thymus (25. Serie) (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	
Tonsilla pharyngea	*Bos taurus* L.	Tonsilla pharyngea from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Tonsillae palatinae	*Bos taurus* L.	Tonsilla palatinae from the calf		Calendula/Echinacea comp. (02.03.1991)	
Trabeculum*	*Bos taurus* L.	Trabeculum from the calf		Trabeculum comp. (03.07.1992)	Liste HAS (10.2012)
Trachea	*Bos taurus* L.	Trachea from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Tractus digestivus	*Bos taurus* L.	Equal parts of the complete digestive system from the bovine foetus			ABMA-Vademecum: Tractus digestivus-Cuprum Sirimim P. 257

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Trigonum vesicae et Musculus sphincter	*Bos taurus* L.	Tissue of the vesica from the region of the Trigonum vesicae and muscular tissue from the sphincter of the vesica from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Truncus cerebri*	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts from Hypothalamus, Thalamus, Corpora quadrigemina, Pons, Medulla oblongata and Cerebellum from the calf		Hirnstamm/Triticum (28. Serie) (DAZ Nr. 29 vom 21.07.1994)	
Truncus coeliacus	*Bos taurus* L.	Arteria coeliaca (Truncus coeliacus) from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Truncus encephali	*Bos taurus* L.	Brain stem from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Truncus encephali	*Bos taurus* L.	Hypothalamus, Thalamus, Corpora quadrigemina, Pons, Medulla oblongata from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Truncus sympathicus	*Bos taurus* L.	Truncus sympathicus from the calf			Vademecum: Sympathicus
Tuba auditiva*	*Bos taurus* L.	Tuba auditiva from the calf			Vademecum [mentioned under: Cavum tympani]
Tuba uterina	*Bos taurus* L.	Tuba uterina from the cow		Echinacea/ Parametrium comp. (25.10.1994)	
Tuba uterina	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Tuba uterina from the (female) rabbit		Echinacea/ Parametrium comp. (25.10.1994)	
Tunica mucosa intestini tenuis	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Mucosa from the different regions of the small intestine from the pig			IVAA statement 2013
Tunica mucosa nasi	*Bos taurus* L.	Tunica mucosa nasi from the calf		Bronchi/Plantago comp. (12.09.1992)	
Tunica mucosa recti	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Tunica mucosa recti from the pig			IVAA statement 2013
Tunica mucosa ventriculi	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Mucosa from the different regions of the stomach from the pig			IVAA statement 2013
Ureter	*Bos taurus* L.	Ureter from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Urethra feminina	*Bos taurus* L.	Urethra from the female calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Urethra masculina	*Bos taurus* L.	Urethra from the male calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Uterus	*Bos taurus* L.	Uterus from the cow		Berberis/Uterus comp. (12.09.1992)	
Uterus	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Uterus from the (female) rabbit		Berberis/Uterus comp. (12.09.1992)	
Uterus	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Uterus from the pig		Berberis/Uterus comp. (12.09.1992)	
Uvea*	*Bos taurus* L.	Uvea from the calf			Liste HAS (10.2010: Uvea comp.)
Vagina	*Bos taurus* L.	Vagina from the cow			IVAA statement 2013
Vaginae synoviales tendinum	*Bos taurus* L.	Tendon sheaths from the calf		Allium cepa/Tendo comp. (12.09.1992)	
Valva trunci pulmonalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Valva trunci pulmonalis from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Valvula aortae	*Bos taurus* L.	Valva aortae from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Valvula mitralis	*Bos taurus* L.	Valva mitralis from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Valvula tricuspidalis	*Bos taurus* L.	Valva tricuspidalis from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Vena cava	*Bos taurus* L.	Parts of the Vena cava cranialis and Vena cava caudalis from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Vena femoralis	*Bos taurus* L.	Vena femoralis from the calf			Der Merkurstab: Sonderheft 1999
Vena portae	*Bos taurus* L.	Vena portae from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Vena saphena magna	*Bos taurus* L.	Vena saphena magna from the calf			Vademecum: Vena saphena magna
Vena tibialis	*Bos taurus* L.	Vena tibialis from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Ventriculus	*Sus scrofa domestica* L.	Ventriculus from the pig			Vademecum: Ventriculus
Vertebra cervicalis*	*Bos taurus* L.	Vertebra cervicalis from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Vertebra coccygea	*Bos taurus* L.	Vertebra coccygea from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Vertebra lumbalis*	*Bos taurus* L.	Vertebra lumbalis from the calf			IVAA statement 2013
Vesica fellea	*Bos taurus* L.	Vesica fellea from the calf		Ferrum/Vesica fellea (25.10.1994)	

Scientific name	Scientific name of the animal	Abbreviated definition	Reference to Standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Vesica urinaria	*Bos taurus* L.	Vesica urinaria from the calf		Cantharis comp. (01.07.1992)	
Vesica urinaria	*Oryctolagus cuniculus* L.	Vesica urinaria from the rabbit		Cantharis comp. (01.07.1992)	
Vespa crabro	*Vespa crabro* L.	Live hornets	HAB	Vespa crabro (25.10.1994)	Vademecum: Vespa crabro
Vespa vulgaris	*Vespula germanica* Fabricius, *Vespula vulgaris* L. *and/or Dolichovespula saxonia* Fabricius	Live worker wasps			Liste HAS (10.2012)
Vipera berus	*Vipera berus* L.	Freeze dried venom of Vipera berus L.		Naja comp. (25.10.1994)	

APPENDIX 2.4

Starting materials that can be described chemically

Additional Information, see p. 22

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
	Acidum arsenicosum	see Arsenii trioxidum aph			
Acidum benzoicum	Acidum benzoicum, Benzoicum acidum pph	Benzoic acid	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)		
	Acidum benzoicum e resina	Benzoic acid from Siam benzoin	HAB		
Acidum citricum anhydricum	Acidum citricum	Citric acid, anhydrous	Ph.Eur. (HAB)		
Acidum citricum monohydricum		Citric acid monohydrate	Ph.Eur.	Berberis/Silicea comp. (02.03.1991)	
	Acidum Formicae	see Appendix 2.3			
	Acidum formicicum	Formic acid	HAB		
	Acidum hexachloroplatinicum	Hexachloroplatinic acid	HAB	Pancreas/Platinum chloratum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Acidum hydrochloridum dilutum	Acidum hydrochloricum	Hydrochloric acid, dilute (10%)	Ph.Eur. (HAB)	Acidum hydrochloricum comp. (02.09.1987)	
Acidum lacticum	Acidum lacticum	Lactic acid	Ph.Eur.	Majorana/Thuja comp. (02.03.1991)	
Acidum nitricum	Acidum nitricum, Nitricum acidum pph	Nitric acid	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)	Mixtura Stanni comp. (05.12.1989)	
Acidum phosphoricum dilutum	Acidum phosphoricum	Phosphoric acid, dilute (10%)	Ph.Eur. HAB	Apis regina/Aurum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Acidum phosphoricum concentratum	Acidum phosphoricum concentratum, Phosphoricum acidum pph	Phosphoric acid, concentrated	Ph.Eur. (Ph.fr.)	Apis regina/Aurum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Acidum silicicum	Acidum silicicum	Precipitated silicon dioxide	DAB		
Acidum sulfuricum	Acidum sulfuricum, Sulfuricum acidum pph	Sulfuric acid	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)		
Acidum tartaricum	Acidum tartaricum	Tartaric acid	Ph.Eur.		
	Aesculinum	Aesculin	DAB / HAB	Echinacea/Prunus comp. (04.06.1986)	
	Aethiops antimonialis	see Hydrargyrum stibiato-sulfuratum		Aethiops antimonialis (02.09.1987)	
Alumen	Alumen	Alum	Ph.Eur.	Mixtura Stanni comp. (05.12.1989)	
	Alumen chromicum	Potassium chromium(III) sulfate dodecahydrate			
Aluminium-kalium-sulfuricum		see Alumen	Ph.Eur.		

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Ammoniae solutio concentrata		Ammonia solution, concentrated	Ph.Eur.		
	Ammonium carbonicum	Mixture of ammonium hydrogen carbonate and ammonium carbamate of varying proportions	HAB	Echinacea comp. (04.06.1986)	
	Antimonium tartaricum	see Kalium stibyltartaricum			
Argenti carbonas	Argentum carbonicum	Silver carbonate, 99-100,5% Ag_2CO_3 (see Appendix 2.5, e.g. Viscum Mali cum Argento)			
	Argentum metallicum, Argentum metallicum pph	Metallic silver	HAB, Ph.fr.	Argentum metallicum (04.06.1986)	
Argenti nitras	Argentum nitricum, Argentum nitricum pph	Silver nitrate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)	Argentum nitricum (04.06.1986)	
Arsenii trioxidum aph	Arsenicum album	Arsenious trioxide fhp	Ph.Eur.	Arsenicum album (02.09.1987)	
	Aurum chloratum	Hydrogen tetrachloroaurate(III) trihydrate	HAB	Apis regina/Aurum comp. (02.03.1991)	
	Aurum chloratum natronatum	see Natrium tetrachloroauratum			
	Aurum metallicum, Aurum metallicum pph	Metallic gold	HAB, Ph.fr.	Aurum metallicum (04.06.1986)	
	Aurum metallicum foliatum	Gold leaf			
	Aurum naturale	see Appendix 2.1			
	Aurum muriaticum natronatum	see Natrium tetrachloroauratum			
	Aurum sulfuratum	Mixture of gold(I)- and gold(III) sulfide			
	Barium citricum	Barium citrate hexahydrate		Barium/Pancreas comp. (02.03.1991)	
Barii iodidum	Barium iodatum	Barium iodide monohydrate	HAB		
	Benzoicum acidum pph	see Acidum benzoicum			

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
	Bismutum metallicum	Metallic bismuth	HAB	Bismutum/Stibium (12.09.1992)	
	Bismuthum pph	see Bismutum subnitras ponderosus			
Bismutum subnitras ponderosus	Bismutum subnitricum, Bismuthum pph	Bismuth subnitrate, heavy	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)	Carbo Sanguinis comp. (25.10.1994)	
Borax	Natrium tetraboracium, Borax pph	Disodium tetraborate decahydrate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)		
	Calcarea formicica (Calcium formicicum)	Calcium formate, obtained from Conchae and Acidum Formicae (see Appendix 2.3)		Vitis comp. (04.06.1986)	
	Calcarea phosphorica pph	see Calcii hydrogenophos-phas dihydricus			
Calcii hydroxidum	Calcii hydroxidum	Calcium hydroxide	Ph.Eur.		
Calcii oxidum		Freshly burnt lime or marble			
Calcii carbonas	Calcium carbonicum	Calcium carbonate	Ph.Eur.		
Calcii hydrogenophosphas dihy-dricus	Calcium phosphoricum, Calcarea phosphorica pph	Calcium hydrogen phosphate dihydrate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)		
	Calcium stibiato-sulfuratum	A mixture, prepared by melting stibium sulfuratum nigrum, sulfur and conchae together	HAB		
Calcii sulfas dihydricus	Calcium sulfuricum, Calcarea sulfurica pph	Calcium sulfate dihydrate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)		
d-Camphora	Camphora, Camphora pph	D-Camphor	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)	Camphora (04.06.1986)	
	Cerussa	see Plumbum carbonicum			
Chinini sulfas	Chininum sulfuricum	Quinine sulfate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)		
	Chlorophyllum	The green plant pigment (Green of leaves).		Argentum/Quercus comp. (04.06.1986)	

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
	Cinnabaris	see Hydrargyrum sulfuratum rubrum or Cinnabar in Appendix 2.1			
	Cobaltum metallicum	Metallic cobalt	HAB	Cobaltum metallicum (12.09.1992)	
	Creosotum	see Kreosotum			
	Copper tetrammine sulphate monohydrate	Prepared from copper(II) sulfate pentahydrate and concentrated ammonia solution. See Appendix 2.6 Cuprum-Ren		Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis (12.09.1992)	
	Cupro-Stibium	Alloy of 1 part of copper and 1 part of antimony			
Cupri acetas monohydricus aph	Cuprum aceticum	Copper(II) acetate monohydrate fhp	Ph.Eur. (HAB)	Cuprum aceticum (04.06.1986)	
	Cuprum citricum	Copper(II) citrate 2,5 Hydrate			
Cuprum aph	Cuprum metallicum	Copper fhp	Ph.Eur. (HAB)	Cuprum metallicum (04.06.1986)	
	Cuprum oxydulatum rubrum	Copper(I) oxide		Cuprum oxydulatum rubrum (02.03.1990)	
Cupri sulfas pentahydricus	Cuprum sulfuricum	Copper(II) sulfate pentahydrate	Ph.Eur. (HAB)	Cuprum sulfuricum (02.03.1990)	
Dinatrii phosphas dodecahydricus	Natrium phosphoricum, Natrum phosphoricum pph	Disodium phosphate dodecahydrate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)	Robinia comp. (12.09.1992)	
	Ferrum citricum	Iron(III) citrate, containing not less than 18.0 and not more than 20.0 per cent of Fe (Ar 55.85)			
	Ferrum gluconicum	Iron(II) gluconate (Ferrous gluconate)		Ferrum/Acidum cholalicum (25.10.1994)	
	Ferrum hydroxydatum	see Appendix 2.6 (Ferrum hydroxydatum)			
Ferrum aph	Ferrum metallicum	Iron fhp (obtained by reduction or sublimation)	Ph.Eur. (HAB)	Ferrum metallicum (04.06.1986)	

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
	Ferrum metallicum reductum	Iron obtained by reduction of the mineral siderite	(HAB)		
	Ferrum phosphoricum, Ferrum phosphoricum pph (Ferrosi phosphas aph)	Hydrated iron(III) phosphate	HAB, Ph.fr.	Ferrum phosphoricum (04.06.1986)	
	Ferrum sesquichloratum solutum, Ferrum sesquichloratum	Aqueous solution of iron(III) chloride hexahydrate	HAB	Ferrum praeparatum comp. (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	
Ferrosi sulfas desiccatus	Ferrum sulfuricum	Ferrous sulfate, dried	Ph.Eur. (HAB)		
Ferrosi sulfas heptahydricus		Ferrous sulfate heptahydrate	Ph.Eur.	Ferrum/Quarz (04.06.1986)	
	Ferrum ustum	Complex Iron(II, III) oxide – obtained by glowing and forging metallic iron – containing not less than 71.0 and not more than 75.0 per cent of Fe (Ar 55.85)		Ferrum ustum comp. (04.06.1986)	
	Ferrum(III)-kalium-tartaricum	Iron(III) potassium tartrate dehydrate (Ferric potassium tartrate)		Solutio Ferri comp. (25.10.1994)	
	Glonoinum	see Nitroglycerinum			
Hydrargyri dichloridum	Hydrargyrum bichloratum,	Mercuric chloride	Ph.Eur. (HAB)		
	Hydrargyrum bicyanatum	Mercury(II) cyanide	HAB	Mercurius cyanatus (02.09.1987)	
	Hydrargyrum biiodatum	Mercury(II) iodide	HAB	Trabeculum comp. (03.07.1992)	
	Hydrargyrum chloratum Mercurius dulcis pph	Mercury(I) chloride	HAB, Ph.fr.	Mercurius dulcis (05.12.1989)	
	Hydrargyrum metallicum, Mercurius vivis, Mercurius vivus pph	Metallic mercury	HAB, Ph.fr.	Mercurius vivus (02.09.1987)	
	Hydrargyrum nitricum oxydulatum	Mercury(I) nitrate dihydrate	HAB		
	Hydrargyrum stibiato-sulfuratum		HAB		

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
Hydrargyri sulfas		Mercury(II) sulfate, 99–100,5% $HgSO_4$, (see Apppendix 2.5, e.g. Viscum Mali cum Hydrargyro)			
	Hydrargyrum sulfuratum nigrum	Black Mercury(II) sulfide	HAB	Aethiops antimonialis (02.09.1987)	
Hydrargyri sulfidum aph	Hydrargyrum sulfuratum rubrum, Cinnabaris, Cinnabaris pph	Red Mercury(II) sulfide	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)	Echinacea/Prunus comp. (04.06.1986)	
Iodum	Jodum, Iodum pph	Iodine	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)	Jodum (07.04.1988)	
	Kalium arsenicosum pph	Potassium arsenite, $KAs0_2$	Ph.fr.		
Kalii bichromas aph	Kalium bichromicum	Potassium dichromate fhp	Ph.Eur. (HAB)	Kalium bichromicum (07.04.1988)	
Kalii carbonas	Kalium carbonicum, Kalium carbonicum pph	Potassium carbonate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)	Kalium carbonicum (12.09.1992)	
	Kalium carbonicum e cinere Fagi	Potassium carbonate, prepared from the ash of beechwood (Fagus silvatica)		Agropyron comp. (07.04.1988)	
Kalii chloridum	Kalium chloratum, Kalium muriaticum pph	Potassium chloride	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)		
	Kalium-Eisen-Tartrat	see Ferrum(III)-kalium-tartaricum			
Kalii hydrogenotartras		Potassium hydrogen tartrate	Ph.Eur.		
Kalii iodidum	Kalium iodatum, Kalium iodatum pph	Potassium iodide	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)		
Kalii nitras	Kalium nitricum, Kalium nitricum pph	Potassium nitrate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)		
Kalii dihydrogenophosphas	Kalium phosphoricum, Kalium phosphoricum pph	Potassium dihydrogen phosphate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)	Berberis/Hypericum comp. (25.10.1994)	
	Kalium stibyltartaricum	Potassium di-μ-tartratobis[antimonate(III)] trihydrate	HAB	Tartarus stibiatus (02.09.1987)	

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
	Kalium sulfuratum, Hepar sulfuris kalinum	Crude potash, containing a mixture of mainly potassium trisulfide and potassium metabisulfite (dipotassium pyrosulfite)	(HAB 1934, DAB 6, Ph. Helv. VI))	Kalium sulfuratum (02.03.1991)	
Kalii sulfas	Kalium sulfuricum, Kalium sulfuricum pph	Potassium sulfate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)	Kalium/Teucrium comp. (25.10.1994)	
	Kreosotum		HAB	Kreosotum (05.12.1989)	
	Liquor natrii silicici	see Natrii silicici, Liquor			
Lithii carbonas	Lithium carbonicum, Lithium carbonicum pph	Lithium carbonate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)		
Magnesii chloridum hexahydricus	Magnesium chloratum, Magnesia muriatica pph	Magnesium chloride hexahydrate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)		
	Magnesium hydroxydatum	Magnesium hydroxide (see also Appendix 2.6 e.g. Hepar-Magnesium)	Ph.Eur.	Hepar-Magnesium (03.07.1992)	
	Magnesium metallicum	Metallic magnesium	HAB		
Magnesii hydrogenophosphas trihydricus	Magnesium phosphoricum, Magnesia phosphorica pph	Magnesium hydrogen phosphate trihydrate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)	Magnesium phosphoricum (12.09.1992)	
	Magnesium phosphoricum acidum 20%	Aqueous solution of magnesium dihydrogen phosphate (20 per cent m/m)		Magnesium phosphoricum acidum (12.09.1992)	
Magnesii sulfas heptahydricus	Magnesium sulfuricum, Magnesia sulfurica pph	Magnesium sulfate heptahydrate	Ph.Eur.	Magnesium sulfuricum/Ovaria comp. (25.10.1994)	
	Mercurius auratus	Gold-mercury alloy, containing at least 32.0 and not more than 35.0 per cent Au (Ar 196,97) and at least 65.0 and not more than 68.0 per cent Hg (Ar 200,59)			
	Mercurius bijodatus	see Hydrargyrum biiodatum			
	Mercurius cyanatus	see Hydrargyrum bicyanatum			

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
	Mercurius dulcis	see Hydrargyrum chloratum			
	Mercurius solubilis Hahnemanni		HAB	Echinacea/Mercurius comp. (03.07.1992)	
	Mercurius sublimatus corrosivus	see Hydrargyri dichloridum			
	Mercurius vivus	see Hydrargyrum metallicum			
	Minium	Minium [Lead(II,IV) oxide]	HAB	Minium (03.07.1992)	
Natrii carbonas decahydricus		Sodium carbonate decahydrate	Ph.Eur.		
Natrii carbonas monohydricus	Natrium carbonicum, Natrum carbonicum pph	Sodium carbonate monohydrate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)	Fragaria/Urtica comp. (03.07.1992)	
Natrii chloridum	Natrium chloratum, Natrum muriaticum pph	Sodium chloride	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)		
	Natrium phosphoricum, Natrum phosphoricum pph	see Dinatrii phosphas dodecahydricus			
Natrii silicici, Liquor	Liquor natrii silicici	Aqueous solution of sodium polysilicate with 7,5 – 8,5% sodium oxide (Na_2O) and 25,5 – 28,5% silicicum dioxide (SiO_2). (See also Appendix 2.6 e.g. Uvea comp.)	DAB 6	Berberis/Silicea comp. (02.03.1991)	
Natrii sulfas anhydricus	Natrium sulfuricum, Natrum sulfuricum pph	Anhydrous sodium sulfate	Ph.Eur. (HAB, Ph.fr.)	Lycopodium comp. (12.09.1992)	
	Natrium tetraboracium	see Borax	Ph.Eur.		
Natrii tetrachloroauras dihydricus aph	Natrium tetrachloroauratum	Sodium tetrachloroaurate dihydrate fhp	Ph.Eur. (HAB)		
	Nitricum acidum pph	see Acidum nitricum			
Nitroglycerinum	Glonoinum, Glonoinum pph	Solution of glycerol trinitrate (1 per cent) in Ethanol 96 per cent	HAB, Ph.fr.	Glonoinum (07.04.1988)	

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
	Petroleum rectificatum, Petroleum pph	Petroleum spirit boiling between 180 and 220 °C obtained by rectification of crude oil	HAB, Ph.fr.	Petroleum (05.12.1989)	
	Phosphoricum acidum pph	see Acidum phosphoricum concentratum			
	Phosphorus	Yellow phosphorus	HAB	Phosphorus (04.06.1986)	
	Phosphorus ruber	Red amorphous phosphorus			
	Phosphorus metallicus (niger)	Black metallic phosphorus			
	Platinum chloratum	see Acidum hexachloroplatinicum			
	Platinum metallicum	Metallic platin	HAB		
	Plumbum aceticum	Lead(II) acetate trihydrate	HAB		
	Plumbum jodatum	Lead(II) iodide			
	Plumbum metallicum	Metallic lead	HAB	Plumbum metallicum (02.09.1987)	
	Plumbum silicicum	Lead(II) meta silicate, obtained by smelting cerussite and quartz.		Plumbum silicicum (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	
Plumbi carbonas	Plumbum carbonicum	Basic lead(II) carbonate		Cinis Capsellae comp. (03.07.1992)	
Saccharum	Saccharum Sacchari	Sucrose obtained from the stems of Saccharum officinarum L.	Ph.Eur.	Argentum/Rohrzucker (05.12.1989)	
	Silicea	see Acidum silicicum			
	Silicea colloidalis	Colloidal silica, directly obtained in the manufacture of the finished product by reaction of adjusted amounts of aqueous solutions of sodium silicate and citric acid monohydrate.		Berberis/Silicea comp. (02.03.1991)	
Stannosi chloridum dihydricum		Stannous chloride dihydrate	Ph.Eur.		

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
	Stannum hydroxydatum	Tin(II) hydroxide (see also Appendix 2.6 e.g. Hepar-Stannum)			
	Stannum metallicum	Metallic tin	HAB	Stannum metallicum (04.06.1986)	
	Stannum silicicum	Translucent melt from silica hydroxide and tin(II,IV) hydroxide			
	Stibium arsenicosum	Mixture of equal parts of antymony(V)oxide and arsenic(III)oxide	HAB	Stibium arsenicosum (02.09.1987)	
	Stibium metallicum	Metallic antimony	HAB	Stibium metallicum (04.06.1986)	
	Stibium sulfuratum aurantiacum	Mixture of antimony(V) sulfide and sulfur	HAB	Stibium sulfuratum aurantiacum (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	
	Stibium sulfuratum nigrum, Antimonium crudum pph	Black Antimony(III) sulfide	HAB, Ph.fr.	Aethiops antimonialis (02.09.1987)	
Sulfur aph	Sulfur	sulfur fhp (sublimed sulfur)	Ph.Eur. (HAB)	Sulfur (04.06.1986)	
Sulfur iodidum	Sulfur iodatum	Mixture of 4 parts of iodine and 1 part of sulfur carefully melted together (contains 70–80% I)	HAB		
Sulfur iodidum aph	Iode et soufre (mélange d') pph	Mixture of 4 parts of iodine and 1 part of sulfur carefully melted together (contains 75–82% I)	Ph.fr.		
	Sulfuricum acidum pph	see Acidum sulfuricum			
	Sulfur selenosum	Mixture obtained by melting 1 part of selen with 99 parts of sulfur.			
	Tartarus depuratus	Purified tartar, mainly consisting of potassium hydrogen tartrate			
	Tartarus stibiatus	see Kalium stibyltartaricum			
	Tetrammine copper(II) sulfate	see Copper tetrammine sulfate monohydrate			

Latin name: Ph.Eur., HAB or Ph.fr.	Traditional name: HAB and/or Ph.fr.	Abbreviated definition English Name Ph.Eur. if applicable	Reference to standard	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
				KC Monograph (date)	Other
	Zincum isovalerianicum, Zincum valerianicum	Zinc isovalerate dihydrate	HAB	Zincum valerianicum (02.09.1987)	
	Zincum metallicum, Zincum metallicum pph	Metallic zinc	HAB, Ph.fr.		
	Zincum valerianicum	see Zincum isovalerianicum			

APPENDIX 2.5

Starting material that have undergone special treatment

Additional Information, see p. 22

Name of the substance	Abbreviated definition	Reference to standard (for the plant)	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			Commission C monograph (date)	Other
Aconitum napellus Plumbo cultum	Whole fresh plants of Aconitum napellus L., collected at the start of flowering, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted lead containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Aconitum napellus Plumbo cultum (12.09.1992)	
Atropa belladonna Cupro culta	Whole fresh plants of Atropa bella-donna L., without woody lower stem sections, collected at the end of flowering, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted copper containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).			
Bryophyllum pinnatum Argento culta	Fresh leaves of Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken [Syn. Kalanchoe pinnata (Lam.) Pers.], harvested in the first year of growth, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted silver containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Bryophyllum Argento cultum (03.07.1992)	
Bryophyllum pinnatum Mercurio culta	Fresh leaves of Bryophyllum pinnatum (Lam.) Oken [Syn. Kalanchoe pinnata (Lam.) Pers.], harvested in the first year of growth, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted mercury containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Bryophyllum Mercurio cultum (12.09.1992)	
Chamomilla recutita Cupro culta	Fresh underground parts of Chamomilla recutita (L.) Rauschert, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted copper containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).		Chamomilla Cupro culta, Radix (03.07.1992)	
Chelidonium majus Ferro cultum	Fresh rhizome and adherent roots of Chelidonium majus L., collected during late autumn or on the appearance of the first shoots, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted iron containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Chelidonium Ferro cultum (03.07.1992)	
Cichorium intybus Plumbo cultum	Whole fresh flowering plants of Cichorium intybus L. (var. intybus and/or var. sativum DC), cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted lead containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Cichorium Plumbo cultum (03.07.1992)	
Cichorium intybus Stanno cultum	Whole fresh flowering plants of Cichorium intybus L. (var. intybus and/or var. sativum DC), cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted tin containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Cichorium Stanno cultum (Pharm.Ind. 11, 1990)	
Cichorium intybus Stanno cultum, Radix	Fresh root of Cichorium intybus L. (var. intybus and/or var. sativum DC), collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted tin containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).		Cichorium Stanno cultum (Pharm.Ind. 11, 1990)	
Cinis Urticae Ferro cultae	Dried and ashed aerial parts of Urtica dioica L., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted iron containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).		(Urtica dioica Ferro culta (03.07.1992))	
Equisetum arvense Silicea cultum	Fresh green sterile aerial parts of Equisetum arvense L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.2 (using a diluted silicate containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB: Equisetum arvense Rh)	Equisetum arvense Silicea cultum (12.09.1992)	

Name of the substance	Abbreviated definition	Reference to standard (for the plant)	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			Commission C monograph (date)	Other
Hypericum perforatum Auro cultum	Fresh aerial parts of Hypericum perforatum L., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted gold containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Hypericum Auro cultum (03.07.1992)	
Kalanchoe pinnatum Argento culta	see Bryophyllum pinnatum Argento culta			
Kalanchoe pinnatum Mercurio culta	see Bryophyllum pinnatum Mercurio culta			
Melissa officinalis Cupro culta	Fresh aerial parts of Melissa officinalis L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted copper containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Melissa Cupro culta (25.10.1994)	
Nasturtium officinale Mercurio cultum	Fresh aerial parts of Nasturtium officinale R. Br., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted mercury containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Nasturtium Mercurio cultum (25.10.1994)	
Nicotiana tabacum Cupro culta	Fresh leaves of Nicotiana tabacum L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted copper containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Tabacum Cupro cultum (12.09.1992)	
Oenothera Argento culta	Fresh aerial parts of Oenothera biennis L., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted silver containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB 1924)		Vademecum: Oenothera Argento culta
Primula veris Auro culta	Fresh flowers of Primula veris L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted gold containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).		Primula Auro culta (25.10.1994)	
Taraxacum officinale Stanno cultum	Whole fresh flowering plants of Taraxacum officinale agg. F.H. Wigg., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted tin containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Taraxacum Stanno cultum (25.10.1994)	
Thuja occidentalis Argento culta	Fresh, leafy, one-year-old twigs of Thuja occidentalis L., cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted silver containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).	(HAB)	Thuja occidentalis Argento culta (12.09.1992)	
Urtica dioica Ferro culta	Fresh aerial parts of Urtica dioica L, collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted iron containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).		Urtica dioica Ferro culta (03.07.1992)	
Urtica dioica Ferro culta, Cinis	see Cinis Urticae Ferro cultae			
Urtica dioica Ferro culta, Radix	Fresh underground parts of Urtica dioica L., collected at flowering time, cultivated according to APC Method 1.1.1 (using a diluted iron containing substance for the treatment of the soil for the 1st life cycle).		Urtica dioica Ferro culta (03.07.1992)	

APPENDIX 2.6

List of compositions

Additional Information, see p. 22

Name of the substance	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph (date)	Other
Alkali comp.	Commiphora Jacq. species (Myrrh) / Kalium carbonicum / Quarz / Trona	The mineral composition according to the model of Cichorium intybus, Planta tota, Alkali comp. is made from: Potassium carbonate / Trona / Quartz and Myrrh. Potassium carbonate, Trona and quartz are intensively triturated and mixed with an organic binder (Myrrh).		Vademecum: Alkali comp.
Anis-Pyrit	Pimpinella anisum L. / Pyrite / Saccharum (Saccharum officinarum L.)	1 g Anis-Pyrit is prepared from: Pimpinella anisum, Fructus 0.33 g / pyrite 0.33 g / saccharum 0.33 g. Warmed pyrite powder and melted sucrose (cane sugar) are thoroughly mixed, the powdered aniseed added, with final thorough mixing. This formulation is diluted with an equal amount of lactose monohydrate, grinded and sieved. The resulting preparation is named Anis-Pyrit 50%. The potency Anis-Pyrit D1 is prepared from 2 parts Anis-Pyrit 50% and 8 parts lactose monohydrate.	Anis-Pyrit (04.06.1986)	
Apis cum Levistico	Apis mellifica L. / Levisticum officinale W. D. J. Koch	1 g Apis cum Levistico Ø (= D1) is prepared from 0.1 g Apis mellifica / 0.1 g aqueous extract of Levisticum, Radix (drug to extract = 4:1). The bees are killed, comminuted and mixed with a freshly prepared aqueous extract of Levisticum, Radix (drug to extract = 4:1) and glycerol 85%. The liquid is further processed immediately.	Apis cum Levistico (12.09.1992)	
Argentum-Corpus vitreum	Argentum metallicum / Corpus vitreum (Bos taurus L. or Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)	Fresh eye ball (Corpus vitreum) is cleaned and mixed with a solution prepared of silver nitrate, concentrated ammonia solution and purified water and mixed. After addition of a solution of glucose monohydrate in purified water the mixture is gently warmed so that the silver nitrate is reduced to the metal. After filtering, the residue is dried with lactose monohydrate, being adjusted to give a final silver content of 1%.	Argentum-Corpus vitreum (12.09.1992)	
Arnica-Cerebrum	Arnica montana L. / Cerebrum, Cerebellum, Truncus cerebri (Bos taurus L. or Oryctolagus cuniculus L.)	1 g Arnica-Cerebrum D1 contains: Arnica, Planta tota, pressed juice 0.05 g/ Cerebrum 0.05 g (Cerebrum = Cerebrum, Cerebellum, brain stem = 2+1+1). The cleaned ingredients of Cerebrum are mixed with the fresh pressed plant juice of Arnica montana and intensively triturated. Water for injections is added and the mixture potentised to make the D1 potency. The D1 potency is further processed immediately.	Arnica-Cerebrum (12.09.1992)	
Calcium silicicum comp.	Arnica montana L. / Calcii oxidum / Camphora / Kalii carbonas / Quarz / Quercus robur L. and Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl. / Triticum aestivum L. emend Fiori et Paol.	The mineral composition according to the model of Arnica montana, Radix, Calcium silicicum comp. is prepared from: Silicate melt (obtained from quartz / potassium carbonate / calcium oxide) / arnica latex / dried water-extract of Quercus, Cortex / camphor / essential oil from Arnica montana, Radix / fresh wheat gluten. The silicate melt is added to a mixture of the Arnica latex and dried extract of Quercus, Cortex and triturated. Finally the camphor and thereafter the essential oil of Arnica are added. The mixture is triturated well, fresh wheat gluten added and the whole kneaded to make a paste. This is then dried, powdered and diluted with lactose monohydrate. Potentisation according to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1.		Vademecum: Calcium silicicum comp.

Name of the substance	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph (date)	Other
Carbo Betulae cum Methano	Betula pendula Roth / Methane	Carbo Betulae (charcoal from the birch) saturated with methane R1 (Ph.Eur.) is used: Powdered Carbo Betulae is heated under vacuum. After heating and during cooling Carbo Betulae is saturated with methane.	Carbo Betulae cum Methano (25.10.1994)	
Chelidonium/ Curcuma praep.	Chelidonium majus L. / Curcuma xanthorrhiza Roxb.	Chelidonium Ø (Ph.Eur. 1.1.5) Curcuma xanthorrhiza, Rhizoma Ø (HAB 19f with 62% Ethanol) are mixed by dropping 1 part of the first into 1 part of the rotating second mother tincture.	Chelidonium/ Curcuma (04.06.1986)	
Chinetum arsenicosum	Cinchona pubescens Vahl	Arsenic acid-bound alkaloid complex obtained from the bark of Cinchona pubescens Vahl	Chinetum arsenicosum (03.07.1992)	
Cinis e fructibus Avenae sativae cum Magnesio phosphorico (1:1)	Avena sativa L. / Magnesium phosphoricum	1. Cinis e fructibus Avenae sativae (ash of the fruit of Avena sativa, oats): Oats are moistened with water to start germination, dried and ashed. 2. Ash of oats with magnesium hydrogen phosphate: Equal parts of ash of oats and magnesium hydrogen phosphate are mixed together. 3. Potentisation according to Ph.Eur. 4.1.1.	Magnesium phosphoricum cum cinere Avenae (02.03.1991)	
Cinis Capsellae comp. APC	Artemisia absinthium L. / Capsella bursa-pastoris (L.) Med. / Cupri sulfas pentahydricus / Ferrosi sulfas desiccatus / Halite / Kalii carbonas/ Plantago lanceolata L. / Plumbum subcarbonicum (Cerussa) / Rosa centifolia L. / Cremor Tartari (Cream of Tartar)	The dried plant material is incinerated. The water soluble ash salts obtained therefrom, potassium carbonate (obtained from Cream of Tartar) and halite are mixed and added to the powder-mixture of copper sulfate and ferrous sulfate. This combined powder is ground until the colour changes to reddish brown. In the next step wine vinegar, in which fresh rose petals have been soaked, is added and the mixture is heated and mixed while the colour turns to pistachio green. When the pasty mass gets more solid, cerussa is added and heating is continued until the mixture is solid and dry. After cooling the substance obtained is powdered. For external use (e.g. ointment, gel) an aqueous solution of the water soluble salts is used as active substance: 9 parts of purified water are added to 1 part of Cinis Capsellae comp. APC, the mixture is agitated in a closed container and allowed to stand at room temperature for at least 20 hours. The supernatant is filtered. The resulting Cinis Capsellae comp. aqueous solution 10% is clear and viridian green (turquoise blue to emerald green) in colour and has to be processed immediately. 1 part Cinis Capsellae comp. aqueous solution 10% corresponds to 0.1 parts of Cinis Capsellae comp. APC.		Vademecum 2013: Cinis Capsellae comp.
Cissus-Ossa	Aves variae, e.g. Phasianus colchicus L. (Ossae) / Cissus gongylodes (Bak.) Burch.	1 g Cissus-Ossa is prepared from: Ethanolic extract from: Cissus gongylodes, aerial root 1.5 g/ Ossa 0.5 g. The bones of partridge or pheasant are cleaned, boiled, dried, powdered and mixed with equal parts of lactose monohydrate. To this mixture add the mother tincture of Cissus gongylodes, aerial roots dried (Ph.Eur. Method 1.1.7).	Cissus-Ossa (03.07.1992)	

Name of the substance	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph (date)	Other
Compositio Cichorii		*See Compositio Mineralis cum Myrrha*		
Compositio Mineralis cum Myrrha APC	Quarz / Kalii carbonas / Commiphora Jacob species (myrrh) / Acidum phosphoricum / Halit / Fructosum / Lactosum monohydricum	The mineral composition according to the model of Cichorium intybus, Planta tota, Compositio Cichorii, is prepared by melting quartz with potassium carbonate. After cooling, the product is dissolved in water and added to powdered myrrh, swollen by adding Spiritus vini and water. Then phosphoric acid is added, leading to precipitation of silicic acid. The mixture is dried, sieved and mixed with halite. A concentrated aqueous solution of caramel of fructose and then lactose monohydrate is added. After drying, the whole mixture is grinded to a uniform powder.		
Compositio Mineralis cum Saccharo APC	Kalii carbonas/ Quarz / Trona/Saccharum	The mineral composition according to the model of Chamomilla (Matricaria recutita L.) Radix, Compositio Mineralis cum Saccharo is prepared from: Potassium carbonate/quartz/trona. Potassium carbonate and quartz are melted together. The melt is dissolved in water to produce a clear solution, and simultaneously with a solution of sucrose added to a solution of potassium carbonate and trona. This mixture is immediately potentised with ethanol 15% to D1.		Der Merkurstab 2012; 65(1): 46-53
Corpus vitreum-Stannum	Corpus vitreum (Bos taurus L. or Oryctolagus cuniculus L.) / Stannum hydroxatum	1 g Corpus vitreum-Stannum D1 contains: Corpus vitreum 0.08 g / stannum hydroxydatum 0.02 g. A solution of tin (II) chloride in purified water is mixed with a solution of sodium carbonate in purified water. The resulting precipitate (stannum hydroxatum) is added to fresh, minced corpus vitreum and thoroughly mixed. The mixture is diluted in the proportion 1:10 with water for injections to make the D1 potency. The D1 potency is further processed immediately.	Corpus vitreum-Stannum (12.09.1992)	
Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis	Glandula suprarenalis / Renes (Bos taurus L. or Oryctolagus cuniculus L.) / Tetrammine copper(II) sulfate	1 g Cuprum-Ren (= D1) contains: Glandula suprarenalis 0.023 g / ren 0.060 g / tetrammine copper(II)sulfate 0.017 g. The fresh, cleaned animal ingredient is mixed with a small amount of water for injections and tetrammine copper (II) sulfate, and triturated together. Afterwards the rest of the water for injections is added to make the D1 potency, and the solution is potentised. The D1 potency is further processed immediately.	Cuprum-Ren-Glandula suprarenalis (12.09.1992)	
Equisetum cum Sulfure tostum	Equisetum arvense L. / Sulfur	Equisetum cum Sulfure tostum is prepared from Equisetum arvense, Herba and sulfur. 99 parts Equisetum arvense, Herba (dried, herbal drug, comminuted to a particle size ≤ 4 mm) are mixed with one part sulfur (particle size ≤ 0,063 mm) and then toasted according to APC 4.1. Heating time: about 5–15 minutes.	Equisetum cum Sulfure tostum (05.12.1989)	
Equisetum limosum-Rubellit	Equisetum limosum L. (Equisetum fluviatile L.) / Rubellit	Fresh harvested shoots of Equisetum limosum L. (Equisetum fluviatile L.) are put into an aqueous dilution of Rubellit D6 during the day and under presence of day light. In the evening the shoots are taken out, comminuted and expressed. The expressed juice is mixed with an equal mass of ethanol 96%. Filter after 5 to 10 days. The filtrate is Equisetum limosum-Rubellit Ø.		Soldner G, Stellmann HM. Individuelle Pädiatrie, 4. Auflage, Wissenschaftl. Verl. Ges., Stuttgart, 2011, p. 743

Name of the substance	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph (date)	Other
Ferrum hydroxydatum	Ferrum aph / Vitis vinifera L.	Ferrum hydroxydatum is prepared from Ferrum metallicum reductum and red wine vinegar. Iron that previously has been obtained from siderite by reduction is covered with red wine vinegar and lightly warmed for about 14 days. Then the solution is filtered, and the residue washed with water and left to react with air. This oxidation releases heat, wherefore the preparation has to be kept moist. The oxidised iron is reduced to powder.	Ferrum hydroxydatum (02.03.1991)	
Ferrum pomatum	Ferrum aph / Malus domestica Borkh.	1 g of the D1 contains: Fe 5 mg. Sour apples are pressed; the juice is mixed with Ferrum metallicum. The mixture is left for several days and then warmed to about 50 °C. Afterwards the solution is filtered and mixed with ethanol 96%.		
Ferrum-Quarz	Ferrosi sulfas desiccatus / Mel, Quarz / Vinum (Vitis vinifera L.)	A mixture of ferrous sulfate, honey, white wine, and calcinated quartz is prepared This mixture is heated and dried under vacuum.	Ferrum / Quarz (04.06.1986)	
Ferrum rosatum	Ferrum sidereum / Rosa centifolia L.	Ferrum rosatum is prepared from Rosa centifolia and Ferrum sidereum D1. Fresh rose petals are triturated with 1% Ferrum sidereum D1 and the amount of water, calculated according to Ph.Eur. 1.1.6, and then allowed to stand for 2-4 days at 15-20^{0}C. Then the calculated amount of ethanol 96% is added and the preparation continued according to Ph.Eur. 1.1.6. The composition can be potentised.	Ferrum rosatum/Graphites (03.07.1992)	
Helleborus niger	Helleborus niger L.	Aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant parts of Helleborus niger L. (Flos rec. and Planta tota rec.), according to APC 7.5.	Helleborus niger (04.06.1986)	
Helleborus foetidus	Helleborus foetidus L.	Aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant parts of Helleborus foetidus L. (Flos rec. and Folium et Radix rec.) according to APC 7.5.		
Hepar-Magnesium	Hepar (Bos taurus L. or Oryctolagus cuniculus L.) / Magnesium hydroxydatum	1 g Hepar-Magnesium D1 contains: Hepar 0.06 g / magnesium hydroxydatum 0.04 g. A solution of magnesium chloride in water is mixed with a solution of sodium hydroxide in water. The resulting precipitate (Magnesium hydroxydatum) is washed several times with water and than mixed with chopped pieces of liver and then together with honey, it is finely triturated. The mixture is mixed with water for injections (Ph.Eur. 3.1.2) or glycerol 85% (Ph.Eur. 2.1.1), and potentised to make the D1 potency. This D1 potency is processed immediately.	Hepar-Magnesium (03.02.1992)	
Hepar-Stannum	Hepar (Bos taurus L. or Oryctolagus cuniculus L.) / Stannum hydroxydatum	1 g Hepar-Stannum contains: Hepar 0.08 g / Stannum hydroxydatum 0.02 g. A solution of tin (II) chloride in water is mixed with a solution of sodium carbonate in water. The resulting precipitate (Stannum hydroxyatum) is washed with water. The resulting Stannum hydroxyatum is mixed with chopped pieces of liver and then thoroughly triturated with honey. The mixture is mixed with water for injections (Ph. Eur. 3.1.2) or glycerol 85% (Ph. Eur. 2.1.1), and potentised to make the D1 potency. This D1 potency is processed immediately.	Hepar-Stannum (02.03.1991)	

Name of the substance	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph (date)	Other
Hepar sulfuris	Ostrea edulis L. / Sulfur	HAB	Hepar sulfuris comp. (05.12.1989)	
Kalium aceticum comp.	Antimonite / Corallium rubrum L. / Crocus sativus L. / Kalii carbonas / Acetum Vini destillatum (Vitis vinifera L.) / Spiritus e Vino (Vitis vinifera L.)	Kalium aceticum comp. is prepared from: Potassium carbonate / distilled red wine vinegar / antimonite / Crocus sativus tincture (vehicle: spiritus e vino) / spiritus e vino / Corallium rubrum. Potassium carbonate/distilled red wine vinegar/antimonite/ Crocus sativus tincture/Corallium rubrum and spiritus e vino are stepwise combined and repeatedly distilled. The resultant dried residue is used.	Kalium aceticum comp. (03.07.1992)	
Kalium sulfuricum comp.	Kalii sulfas / Natrii sulfas / Linum usitatissimum L.	The mineral composition according to the model of Anagallis arvensis, Herba, Kalium sulfuricum comp. is prepared by mixing Kalii sulfas and Natrii sulfas and making a paste by grinding with mucilage of linseed. The mixture is dried, grinded, sieved; and finally diluted with lactose monohydrate.		Vademecum: Kalium sulfuricum comp.
Lapis Cancri praeparatus	Astacus astacus L. / Flint / Vitis vinifera L.	Lapis Cancri praeparatus is prepared by treating a mixture of equal parts of powdered flint and Lapis Cancri with distilled red wine vinegar. The mixture is filtered and the filtrate diluted to 10% dry residue.		
Lapis Cancri - Flintstein	Astacus astacus L. / Flint / Vitis vinifera L.	1 g Lapis Cancri -Flintstein contains: Lapis Cancri 0.5 g/flint 0.5 g: Finely powdered Lapis Cancri and flint are thoroughly mixed with spirito e vino and the slurry treated with water. The resultant dry residue is the substance.	Lapis Cancri / Flintstein (07.04.1988)	
Mixtura Stanni comp.	Alumen / Cuprum metallicum / Stannum metallicum / Acidum nitricum (65 per centum);	1 g suspension is prepared from: 1 mg Alumen / 0,002 mg Cuprum metallicum / 2 mg Stannum metallicum 10,4 mg Acidum nitricum (65 per centum).		Der Merkurstab 2011; 64(4): 332-337
Myrrha comp.	Aurum metallicum / Boswellia species / Commiphora Jacq. Species / Saccharum (Saccharum officinarum L.)	1 g Myrrha comp. D1 is prepared from: Myrrha 0.1 g / Aurum metallicum foliatum (gold leaf) 0.001 g and Olibanum 0.1g. Myrrha and gold leaf are bound together with the aid of moderate heat; incense smoke (from Olibanum) is passed through the mixture. This composition is stirred into molten sucrose (cane sugar). After cooling it is triturated for one hour by hand, resulting the potency D1.		Vademecum: Myrrha comp.
Onopordon comp.	Hyoscyamus niger L. / Onopordum acanthium L. / Primula veris L.	A combination of Onopordum acanthium, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø and Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø	Onopordon comp. (04.06.1986)	

Name of the substance	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph (date)	Other
Onopordon comp. praeparatum	Onopordum acanthium L. / Hyoscyamus niger L. / Primula veris L.	Onopordum acanthium, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø is diluted with water (a). Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) is diluted with water (b). In a special equipment 1 part of the second mixture (b) is dropped into 1 part of the rotating mixture a.	Onopordon comp. (04.06.1986)	
Onopordum acanthium, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø	Onopordum acanthium L. / Hyoscyamus niger L.	Digestio prepared from 1 part of the fresh flowerheads of Onopordum acanthium L. and 3.1 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration or water for injections and the addition of 0.004 to 0.04 parts (corresponding to 0.1 to 1%) of Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba, mother tincture (Ph.Eur. 1.1.3).	Onopordon comp. (04.06.1986)	
Peat moss extract composition I (light)	Solum uliginosum / Aesculus hippocastanum L. / Equisetum arvense L.	98 parts of peat moss extract in analogy to to HAB Method 12c (using purified water only), are mixed with each 1 part of Aesculus hippocastanum e semine according to HAB Method 12m and Equisetum arvense ex herba according to HAB Method 12c. The supernatant liquid is decanted and filtered after 10 - 12 weeks yielding at least 75% Peat moss extract composition I.	Solum uliginosum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Peat moss extract composition II (dark)	Solum uliginosum / Aesculus hippocastanum L. / Equisetum arvense L.	The rest left from the decanting for preparing Peat moss extract composition I, (max. 25%) is Peat moss extract composition II	Solum uliginosum comp. (02.03.1991)	
Plantago lanceolata, Folium rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 1-2% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø	Plantago lanceolata L. / Hyoscyamus niger L.	Digestio prepared from 1 part of the fresh leaves of Plantago lanceolata L. and 3.1 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration or water for injections and the addition of 0.04 to 0.08 parts (corresponding to 1 to 2%) of Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba, mother tincture (Ph. Eur. 1.1.3).	Plantago - Primula cum Hyoscyamo (02.09.1987)	
Plumbum mellitum	Plumbum metallicum / Mel / Saccharum (Saccharum officinarum L.)	Plumbum mellitum is prepared from lead, honey and cane sugar. Depressions are introduced into a sheet of lead, this is filled with honey, and the whole covered with molten lead. After cooling it is grated, melted again and then laid out as a sheet. New depressions are introduced once more. These are filled this time with molten sucrose (cane sugar) and covered with molten lead from the first lead-honey-sheet. After cooling it is finely grated and the D1 potency is prepared by trituration with lactose monohydrate. During the grinding and trituration process the powder must be sieved.	Plumbum mellitum (04.06.1986)	
Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1:3.1) with 0.1-1% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø	Primula veris L. / Hyoscyamus niger L.	A digestio prepared from 1 part of the fresh flowers of Primula veris L. and 3.1 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration or water for injections and the addition of 0.004 to 0.04 parts (corresponding to 0.1 to 1%) of Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba, mother tincture (Ph. Eur. 1.1.3).	Onopordon comp. (04.06.1986)	

Name of the substance	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph (date)	Other
Primula veris, Flos rec., ethanol. Digestio (1: 12.35) with 0.6% Hyoscyamus niger, Herba rec. Ø	Primula veris L. / Hyoscyamus niger L.	Prepared by digestio according to APC 3.8.1 from 1 part of the fresh flowers of Primula veris L. and 12.35 parts of ethanol of suitable concentration and the addition of 0.08 parts (corresponding to 0.6%) of Hyoscyamus niger L., Herba, mother tincture (Ph. Eur. 1.1.3).		
Prunuseisen	Prunus spinosa e floribus et summitatibus ferm cum Ferro	Prepared according to HAB method 37a	Prunus spinosa cum Ferro (25.10.1994)	
Quarz cum Ferro sulfurico	Ferrosi sulfas / Quarz / Mel / Vitis vinifera L.	5 parts of quartz are incinerated to red heat at 800 °C and afterwards cut into small pieces. The quartz is triturated with 9.15 parts of ferrous sulfate. 20 parts of white wine are heated to boiling, and after cooling to 35 °C, made into a paste with the quartz and ferrous sulfate mixture. 10 parts of honey and 20 parts of lactose monohydrate are added and they are mixed well together. The mixture is placed under vacuum and dried at a suitable minimum temperature. While still warm, the tough brittle substance is triturated with enough lactose monohydrate to make 100 parts (mother substance=D1).		
Quercus robur/petrae e cortice cum Calcio carbonico	Quercus robur L., Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl.	1. Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus: oak bark is incinerated. The ash is suspended 1 part in 10 parts of purified water. Carbon dioxide is induced for 5 to 10 minutes and then warmed until bubbling starts (75-85 °C). This temperature is kept until bubbling ends. The cooled suspension is filtered and the residue dried = Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus. 2. Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum: 0.1 part of Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus is mixed with 6100 parts of purified water or water for injections and boiled for 5 minutes. The cooled solution is filtered (for solutions for injection it is decanted and filtered). The result is a saturated aqueous solution of Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus = Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum. 2.1. Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum saccharatum: syrup prepared with sucrose and Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum (64:36). 3. Quercus robur/petrae e cortice cum Calcio carbonico solution = D5: A decoction of oak bark according to HAB Method 23a (Ø=D1) is potentised to D5 with Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum as a vehicle. Appendix: according to the dosage form to be produced either potentise further with Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum (e.g. solution for injection) or with Calcium carbonicum e cinere Quercus solutum saccharatum (Globuli velati).	Calcium carbonicum cum Quercu (02.03.1991)	
Roseneisen	Rosa e floribus ferm cum Ferro	Prepared according to HAB method 37a	Ferrum rosatum/Graphites (03.07.1992)	

Name of the substance	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph (date)	Other
Silex – Lapis cancri solutus	Silex (Flint) / Kalii nitras / Lapis cancri / Acetum Vini dest. (Vitis vinifera L.)	Calcium silicate is precipitated by adding an aqueous solution of potassium silicate (prepared from flint and potassium nitrate) to an aqueous solution of calcium acetate (prepared from Lapis Cancri and distilled red wine vinegar in several steps) and dissolved in distilled red wine vinegar to give a clear solution. The solution is diluted with water to 1.0% and then succussed to result the potency D2.		Vademecum 2013: Silex-Lapis Cancri solutus
Solutio alkalina	Leafy plants / Cream of Tartar	An aqueous solution prepared from the ash of a special compost. Compost production proceeds at about 37^{0}C with green parts of plants, soil and a preparation from tartar.	Solutio alkalina (25.10.1994)	
Solutio Ferri comp.	Kalii carbonas / Ferrum(III)-Kalii-tartaricum / Sulfur / Trona / Acidum tartaricum	The mineral composition according to the model of Urtica dioica, Planta tota, Solutio Ferri comp. is prepared from: Potassium carbonate / ferric potassium tartrate / sulfur / trona / acidum tartaricum. Potassium carbonate, trona and sulfur are melted together. The resulting melt is dissolved in water and alternately heated and subjected to an intensive air-stream. After this procedure ferric potassium tartrate and acidum tartaricum are added. The resulting solution is exposed to the light.	Solutio Ferri comp. (25.10.1994)	
Solutio Sacchari comp.	Acidum sulfuricum / Betula pendula Roth / Kalii carbonas / Ferrum(III)-Kalium-tartaricum / Mel / Quartz / Trona	The mineral composition according to the model of Chamomilla (Matricaria recutita L.), Radix, Solutio Sacchari comp. is prepared from: Carbo Betulae / potassium carbonate / ferric potassium tartrate / honey / quartz / trona. Potassium carbonate, quartz and Carbo Betulae are melted together. The melt is dissolved in water to produce a clear solution, to which a solution of potassium carbonate, trona and diluted sulfuric acid is added. After addition of further diluted sulfuric acid, honey and then ferric potassium tartrate are added. The resulting solution is exposed to the light.	Solutio Sacchari comp. (25.10.1994)	
Solutio Siliceae comp.	Kalii carbonas / Marble / Quarz / Sulfur / Trona	The mineral composition according to the model of Equisetum arvense, Herba, Solutio Siliceae comp. is prepared from: Potassium carbonate / marble / quartz / trona and sulfur. Quartz and potassium carbonate are melted together and dissolved in water. In a further step marble, potassium carbonate and trona are dissolved in water by adding vapour from burning sulfur to a second solution. Both solutions are combined under continuos vapour from burning sulfur. Air is passed through the resulting solution for several hours.	Solutio Silicea comp. (25.10.1994)	
Stannum mellitum	Stannum metallicum / Mel / Saccharum (Saccharum officinarum L.)	Stannum mellitum is prepared from tin with honey and cane sugar. Depressions are introduced into a sheet of tin, this is filled with honey, and the whole covered with molten tin. After cooling it is grated, melted again and then laid out as a sheet. New depressions are introduced once more. These are filled this time with molten sucrose (cane sugar) and covered with molten tin. After cooling it is finely grated and the D1 potency is prepared by trituration with lactose monohydrate. During the grinding and trituration process the powder must be sieved.		Der Merkurstab 1992; 45(2): 108-12

Name of the substance	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph (date)	Other
Trabeculum comp.	Acidum formicicum e formica / Ammoniae solutio concentrata 25% / Cupri sulfas pentahydricus / Hydrargyrum biiodatum / Kalii iodidum / Trabeculum (Bos taurus L.)	1 g of Trabeculum comp. (=D1) is prepared from: 0.1 g Trabeculum / 0.1 g acidum formicicum e formica (5%) / 0.005 g Cupri sulfas / 0.007 g Ammoniae solutio concentrata / 0.03 g Hydrargyrum biiodatum / 0.0225 g Kalii iodidum. Trabeculum is treated with an aqueous solution of Acidum formicicum e formica to make a pulp with a smooth consistency and then mixed with an ammoniacal solution of copper sulfate. Then a solution of mercury (II) iodide and potassium iodide and finally lactose monohydrate is added. After drying, the whole mixture is rubbed to a uniform powder.	Trabeculum comp. (03.07.1992)	
Uvea comp.	Acidum formicicum e formica / Acidum ascorbicum / Liquor natrii silicici / Ferrosi sulfas / Hyoscyamus niger L. / Magnesium phosphoricum acidum / Uvea (Bos taurus L.)	1 g Uvea comp. contains: Uvea bovis 1.00 g / Magnesium phosphoricum acidum 0.10 g / Acidum ascorbicum 0.10 g / Ferrum sulfuricum 0.33 g / Liquor natrii silicici 1.00 g / Hyoscyamus niger, Planta tota Rh Ø (HAB, Method 21) 1.00 g. Uvea is treated with an aqueous solution of Acidum formicicum e formica to make a pulp with a smooth consistency and then mixed with a solution of magnesium phosphate dihydrate and sodium silicate. Then an aqueous solution of ferrous sulfate and ascorbic acid are added, and finally Hyoscyamus, Planta tota Rh Ø is added. After drying, the substance is powdered.		
Viscum Abietis	Viscum album L.	Aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant of Viscum album ssp. abietis (Wiesb.) Janch. (Host tree: Abies alba Mill.; fir tree), prepared according to APC 7.2.2.	Viscum album (04.06.1986)	
Viscum Mali	Viscum album L.	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Malus domestica Boekh.; apple tree), prepared according to APC 7.2.3.		
Viscum Mali	Viscum album L.	Aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Malus domestica Boekh.; apple tree), prepared according to APC 7.2.2.		
Viscum Mali cum Argento	Viscum album L. / Argenti carbonas	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Malus domestica Boekh.; apple tree) with addition of silver carbonate ($2x10^{-5}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Arg. (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	
Viscum Mali cum Cupro	Viscum album L. / Cupri carbonas (malachite)	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Malus domestica Boekh.; apple tree) with addition of copper carbonate (malachite) ($2x10^{-5}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Cu (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	
Viscum Mali cum Hydrargyro	Viscum album L. / Hydrargyri sulfas	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Malus domestica Boekh.; apple tree) with addition of mercury sulfate ($2x10^{-5}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Hg (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	

Name of the substance	Scientific name of ingredients	Preparation method	Exemplary reference for use in anthroposophic medicine	
			KC Monograph (date)	Other
Viscum Pini	Viscum album L.	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollmann (Host tree: Pinus sylvestris L.; pine), prepared according to APC 7.2.3.	Viscum album (04.06.1986)	
Viscum Pini	Viscum album L.	Aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant of Viscum album ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollmann (Host tree: Pinus sylvestris L.; pine), prepared according to APC 7.2.2.		
Viscum Pini cum Argento	Viscum album L. / Argenti carbonas	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollmann (Host tree: Pinus sylvestris L.; pine) with addition of silver carbonate ($2x10^{-5}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant) , prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Arg. (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	
Viscum Pini cum Cupro	Viscum album L. / Cupri carbonas (malachite)	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Pinus sylvestris L.; pine) with addition of copper carbonate (malachite) ($2x10^{-5}$ mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Cu (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	
Viscum Pini cum Hydrargyro	Viscum album L. / Hydrargyri sulfas	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. austriacum (Wiesb.) Vollmann (Host tree: Pinus sylvestris L.; pine) with addition of mercury sulfate (10^{-5} mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Hg (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	
Viscum Querci	Viscum album L.	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Quercus robur L., Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl.; oak), prepared according to APC 7.2.3.	Viscum album (04.06.1986)	
Viscum Querci cum Argento	Viscum album L. / Argenti carbonas	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Quercus robur L., Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl.; oak) with addition of silver carbonate (10^{-5} mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Arg. (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	
Viscum Querci cum Cupro	Viscum album L. / Cupri carbonas (malachite)	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Quercus robur L., Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl.; oak) with addition of copper carbonate (malachite) (10^{-5} mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Cu (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	
Viscum Querci cum Hydrargyro	Viscum album L. / Hydrargyri sulfas	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Quercus robur L., Quercus petraea (Matt.) Liebl.; oak) with addition of mercury sulfate (10^{-5} mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Hg (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	
Viscum Ulmi cum Hydrargyro	Viscum album L. / Hydrargyri sulfas	Fermented aqueous extract prepared from the fresh plant excluding haustorium of Viscum album ssp. album L. (Host tree: Ulmus caprinifolia Gled. [Ulmus campestris L.], Ulmus glabra Huds.; elm) with addition of mercury sulfate (10^{-5} mg per 100 mg fresh plant), prepared according to APC 7.2.4.	Viscum album c. Hg (DAZ Nr. 29, 21.07.1994)	

APPENDIX II

Correlation table: Ph.Eur./HAB manufacturing methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy and corresponding manufacturing methods in the HPUS

Ph. Eur. / HAB methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy	**Corresponding manufacturing in the HPUS**
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.1 (HAB 1a) Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.2 (HAB 1b)	Class O
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.3 (HAB 2a) Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.4 (HAB 2b)	Class M
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.5 (HAB 3a) Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.6 (HAB 3b) Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.7 (HAB 3c)	Class N
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.8 (HAB 4a)	Class C
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.9 (HAB 4b)	Class E
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.10 (Ph. fr.)	No corresponding HPUS method for attenuations, though Class C is the same process for the first step [1]
Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.11 (Ph. fr.)	No corresponding HPUS method for attenuations, though Class D is the same process for the first step [2]
Ph. Eur. Method 3.1.1 (HAB 5a)	Class A or Class B, depending on solubility Characteristics of the starting material
Ph. Eur. Method 3.1.2 (HAB 5b)	Class A or Class B, depending on solubility Characteristics of the starting material
Ph. Eur. Method 4.1.1 (HAB 6)	Class F
Ph. Eur. Method 4.1.2 (Ph. fr.)	Class F
Ph. Eur. Method 4.2.1 (HAB 7)	"Medication: Medicated Powders" applies for centesimal, but not for decimal attenuations [3]
Ph. Eur. Method 3.2.1 (HAB 8a) Ph. Eur. Method 3.2.2 (HAB 8b)	Class H

1 The Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.10 produces a 1:10 preparation from which the D1 or C1 is made. The HPUS Class C also produces a 1:10 preparation. But this is considered the same as a D1. Thus, Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.10 D1 = HPUS D2. For this reason, the methods do not correspond.
2 The Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.11 produces a 1:20 preparation from which the D1 or C1 is made. The HPUS Class D also produces a 1:20 preparation. But the Class D preparation is then attenuated 2 parts + 8 parts vehicle to produce the D2. The preparation by Ph. Eur. Method 1.1.11 is attenuated 1 part + 9 parts vehicle to produce the D1. For this reason, the methods do not correspond.
3 HPUS "Mediated Powders" are specified to be made from 1 part liquid preparation + 100 parts vehicle.

Ph. Eur. / HAB methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy	Corresponding manufacturing in the HPUS
HAB Method 9	"Medication: Tablets"
HAB Method 10	"Medication: Globules"
HAB Method 11	"Forms of vehicles for dispensing"
HAB Method 12a	"Forms of vehicles for dispensing"
HAB Method 12b	Class M
HAB Method 13	"Forms of vehicles for dispensing"
HAB Method 14	"Forms of vehicles for dispensing"
HAB Method 15	"Forms of vehicles for dispensing: Ophthalmic Solutions"
HAB Method 16	New Section 39, and "Introduction to the Homoeopathic Pharmacopoeia of the United States: Statement regarding combinations of homoeopathic drugs"
HAB Method 17	"Attenuations: Fifty Millesimal Scale of Attenuation"
HAB Method 18a-b	Class M, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Incubation"
HAB Methods 18c-e	Class N, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Incubation"
HAB Methods 18f	Class C, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Incubation"
HAB Methods 19a-b	Class M, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
HAB Methods 19c-e	Class N, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
HAB Method 19f	Class C, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"

Ph. Eur. / HAB methods used in anthroposophic pharmacy	**Corresponding manufacturing in the HPUS**
HAB Method 20	Class C, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Infusion"
HAB Method 21	Class O, fermented
HAB Method 22	Class P
HAB Method 23a	Class C, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
HAB Method 23b	Class N, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Decoction"
HAB Method 24a	Class C, "Tinctures of botanical substances: Infusion"
HAB Methods 33	Class P
HAB Methods 34	Class P
HAB Methods 35	Class P
HAB Methods 36	Class P
Ph. Eur. Method 5.1.1 (HAB 40a) Ph. Eur. Method 5.1.2 (HAB 40b) Ph. Eur. Method 5.1.3 (HAB 40c)	No corresponding method
Ph. Eur. Method 2.1.1 (HAB 42a) Ph. Eur. Method 2.1.2 (HAB 42b)	Class L, Method II
Ph. Eur. Method 2.1.3 (Ph. fr.)	No corresponding method
Ph. Eur. Method 2.2.1 (HAB 41a) Ph. Eur. Method 2.2.2 (HAB 41b) Ph. Eur. Method 2.2.3 (HAB 41c) Ph. Eur. Method 2.2.4 (HAB 41d)	Class L, Method II (alternate methodology)
HAB Methods 45	"Forms of vehicles for dispensing: Nasal Solutions"
HAB Methods 51	Class P